

WITH FREE ONLINE AUDIO





ENGLISH FOR EVERYONE

ENGLISH IDIOMS



LEARN AND PRACTISE MORE THAN 1,000 COMMON IDIOMS

Author

Thomas Booth worked for 10 years as an English-language teacher in Poland and Russia. He now lives in England, where he works as an editor and English-language materials writer. He has contributed to a number of books in the *English for Everyone* series.

US consultant

Jenny Wilson, MEd, has taught English as a foreign language in the US and UK for many years, at private institutes and universities including the University of Wisconsin–Madison. She has also worked as an IELTS examiner and written English-language materials for Collins Language, Cambridge University Press, and Corwin.

ENGLISH FOR EVERYONE

ENGLISH IDIOMS



DK

Penguin Random House

Senior Editor Laura Sandford
Senior Art Editor Amy Child
Illustration Square Egg
Managing Editor Christine Stroyan
Managing Art Editor Anna Hall
Jacket Designer Surabhi Wadhwa
Jacket Editor Emma Dawson
Jacket Design Development Manager Sophia MTT
Producer, Pre-production Robert Dunn
Producer Jude Crozier
Publisher Andrew Macintyre
Art Director Karen Self
Publishing Director Jonathan Metcalf

DK India
Senior Editor Janashree Singha
Assistant Editor Rishi Bryan
Project Art Editor Vikas Sachdeva
Art Editors Pallavi Kapur, Roshni Kapur
Assistant Art Editor Monam Nishat
Managing Editor Soma B. Chowdhury
Senior Managing Art Editor Arunesh Talapatra
Pre-production Manager Balwant Singh
DTP Designer Anita Yadav

First published in Great Britain in 2019 by
Dorling Kindersley Limited
80 Strand, London, WC2R 0RL

Copyright © 2019 Dorling Kindersley Limited
A Penguin Random House Company
10 8 6 4 2 1 3 5 7 9
001–309818–Mar/2019

All rights reserved.
No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in or introduced into a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form, or by any means (electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise), without the prior written permission of the copyright owner.

A CIP catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.
ISBN: 978-0-2413-3588-8
Printed in China

All images © Dorling Kindersley Limited
For further information see: www.dkimages.com

A WORLD OF IDEAS:
SEE ALL THERE IS TO KNOW

www.dk.com

Contents

How to use this book 6

DESCRIBING PEOPLE AND THINGS

01 **Age** 10
02 **Friends and family** 14
03 **Appearance and background** 18
04 **Personality traits** 22
05 **Good things** 26
06 **Bad things** 30
07 **Animals** 34
08 **Food** 38

ATTITUDE

09 **Agreeing and disagreeing** 42
10 **Behavior** 46
11 **Emotions** 50
12 **Positive emotions** 54
13 **Negative emotions** 58
14 **Memory** 62
15 **The body** 66
16 **War and weapons** 70

SITUATIONS AND CIRCUMSTANCES

17 **Amount and distance** 74
18 **Beginning and ending** 78

19 Chance, luck, and probability 82
20 Ease and difficulty 86
21 Safety and danger 90
22 Difficult situations 94
23 The weather and nature 98

COMMUNICATION

24 Talking 102
25 Sharing information 106
26 Truth and lies 110
27 Looking and listening 114
28 Music and the arts 118

EVERYDAY LIFE

29 Eating and drinking 122
30 Describing your health 126
31 Knowledge and education 130
32 Money 134
33 Shopping 138
34 Time 142
35 Clothes 146

WORK AND ACHIEVEMENTS

36 Working and relaxing 150
37 Movement and progress 154
38 Rules, law, and authority 158
39 Success and failure 162
40 Work and business 1 166
41 Work and business 2 170
42 Sports 174

EXPRESSIONS

43 "Make" and "do" 178
44 "Give" and "take" 182
45 "Have" and "get" 186
46 "Set" and "put" 190
47 "Go" and "come" 194
48 Expressions with other verbs 198
49 Intensifying adverbs 202
50 Similes 206
51 Proverbs 210
52 Easily confused words 1 214
53 Easily confused words 2 218
54 Colors 222

Answers 226
Index of idioms and expressions 239
Index of common words and subjects 254
Acknowledgments 256

How to use this book

English for Everyone: English Idioms will help you learn, understand, and remember the most common English idioms and expressions. Each of the 54 units in the book consists of a teaching spread on a subject or theme, with illustrated sentences to place the idiom in context, and then a practice spread with exercises to reinforce what you have learned. Listen to the free audio and repeat each expression and sentence. The answers to all the exercises are at the back of the book, along with comprehensive indexes.

Unit number The book is divided into units. The unit number helps you keep track of your progress.

Modules Many teaching spreads are broken into modules covering different categories of idioms.

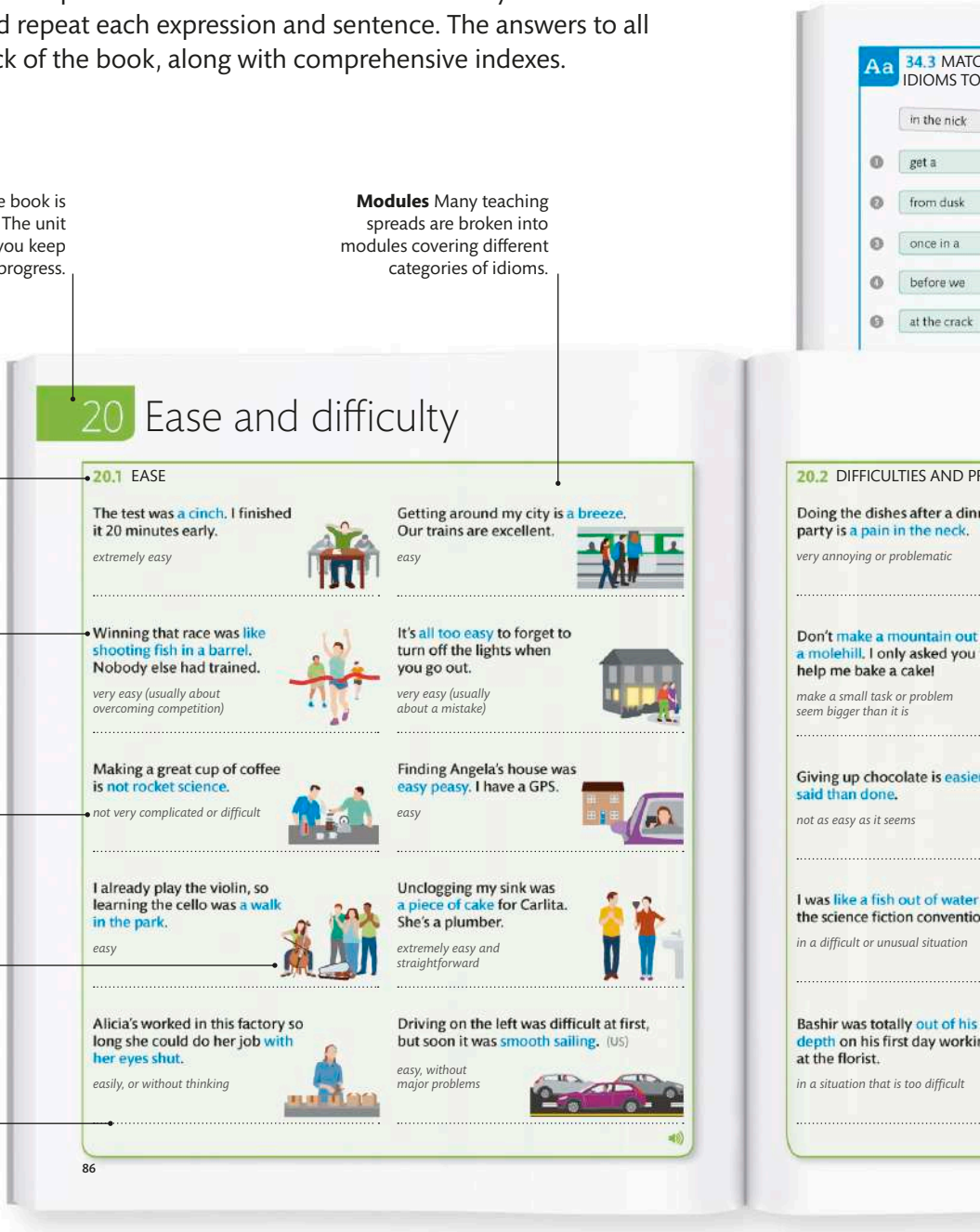
Module number Every module is identified with a unique number, so you can easily locate the related audio.

Sample sentences English idioms are shown in the context of a sample sentence.

Definitions Idiomatic English expressions are accompanied by definitions.

Supporting graphics Visual cues help you understand and remember new idioms.

Write-on lines You are encouraged to write your own translations of English idioms to create your own reference pages.



20 Ease and difficulty

20.1 EASE

The test was a cinch. I finished it 20 minutes early.
extremely easy

Getting around my city is a breeze. Our trains are excellent.
easy

Winning that race was like shooting fish in a barrel. Nobody else had trained.
very easy (usually about overcoming competition)

It's all too easy to forget to turn off the lights when you go out.
very easy (usually about a mistake)

Making a great cup of coffee is not rocket science.
not very complicated or difficult

Finding Angela's house was easy peasy. I have a GPS.
easy

I already play the violin, so learning the cello was a walk in the park.
easy

Unclogging my sink was a piece of cake for Carlita. She's a plumber.
extremely easy and straightforward

Alicia's worked in this factory so long she could do her job with her eyes shut.
easily, or without thinking

Driving on the left was difficult at first, but soon it was smooth sailing. (US)
easy, without major problems

86

20.2 DIFFICULTIES AND PR

Doing the dishes after a din party is a pain in the neck.
very annoying or problematic

Don't make a mountain out a molehill. I only asked you help me bake a cake!
make a small task or problem seem bigger than it is

Giving up chocolate is easie said than done.
not as easy as it seems

I was like a fish out of water the science fiction conventio
in a difficult or unusual situation

Bashir was totally out of his depth on his first day workin at the florist.
in a situation that is too difficult

Aa 34.3 MATC IDIOMS TO

in the nick

1 get a
2 from dusk
3 once in a
4 before we
5 at the crack

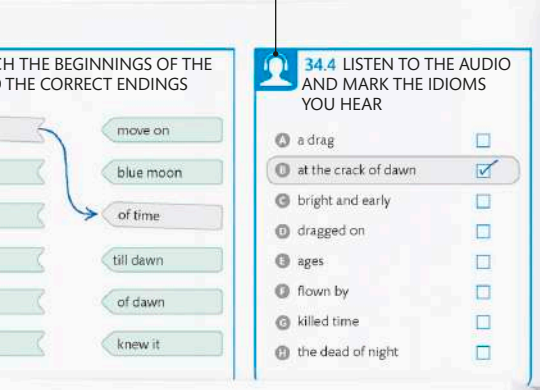
TEACHING SPREAD

Listening exercise This symbol indicates that you should listen to an audio track in order to answer the questions in the exercise.

Exercise number Each exercise is identified with a unique number, so you can easily locate answers.

Sample answer The first question of each exercise is answered for you, to help make the task easy to understand.

Exercise instruction Each exercise is introduced with a brief instruction, telling you what you need to do.



CH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE
THE CORRECT ENDINGS

move on
blue moon
of time
till dawn
of dawn
knew it

34.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE IDIOMS YOU HEAR

A a drag ☐
B at the crack of dawn ☑
C bright and early ☐
D dragged on ☐
E ages ☐
F flown by ☐
G killed time ☐
H the dead of night ☐

Aa **34.6** MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT IDIOMS

kept busy while waiting → killed time

1 unexpectedly soon or quickly
2 very late at night
3 You have no more time to complete a task.
4 a boring experience that passes very slowly
5 at the last possible moment
6 passed very quickly or too quickly

Time's up!
before we knew it
killed time
a drag
the wee hours
flown by
in the nick of time

Aa **34.7** LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES

1 We must *get a move on* or we'll miss the start of the play.
2 Júlio _____ finishing his painting. He wanted it to be perfect.
3 Victoria is always _____ for her English class.
4 Ren arrived _____ for his first day at work.
5 It's nearly midnight. It's _____ we went home.
6 Huan only cooks at home _____.

145



ROBLEMS

My home improvements opened a can of worms. The builders discovered so many problems.
caused a situation that leads to more difficulties

The team has a mountain to climb if it wants to win the game.
a huge amount to do, or problem to overcome

Finishing the building this month is going to be a tall order.
very difficult

There have been teething problems with the new computer system at work. (UK)
problems at the beginning of a process

I tried to make the politician answer my question, but it was like getting blood from a stone. (UK)
extremely difficult, usually because of someone's behavior

87

PRACTICE SPREAD

UK/US idioms Some idioms are specific to UK or US English. These are labeled (UK) or (US).

Space for writing You are encouraged to write your answers in the book for future reference.

Audio support All teaching modules are supported by audio recordings to help you recognize and pronounce spoken vocabulary.

Idioms and expressions

Idioms can be one of the most difficult parts of a language for learners to understand and use correctly. *English for Everyone: English Idioms* includes over 1,000 of the most common and useful English idioms, along with set expressions and easily confused words.

IDIOMS

Idioms are expressions that cannot be understood literally. For example, "like two peas in a pod" has nothing to do with peas, but means two people look alike.

Idiomatic expression

Mateo and his brother Lucas are like two peas in a pod. I can't tell them apart.



SET EXPRESSIONS

Some of the expressions in this book are not idioms, but particular common combinations of words. Learners often make mistakes when they use these set expressions.

Set expression

Shreya's going to have a baby this summer.



EASILY CONFUSED WORDS

This books also includes two units on words that are easily confused by English-language learners, such as "say" and "tell."

When you use "say", you don't have to state who a person is talking to.

"Oh, no," said Kayleigh. "I've left my school bag on the bus with all my homework in it."



When you use "tell", you must state who a person is talking to.

Kayleigh had to tell her teacher that she had left her homework on the bus.



Audio

English for Everyone: English Idioms features extensive supporting audio resources. Every expression and sentence in the teaching spreads is recorded, and you are encouraged to listen to the audio and repeat the phrases and sentences out loud, until you are confident you understand and can pronounce what has been said.

SUPPORTING AUDIO
This symbol indicates that audio recordings of the idioms and sentences in a module are available for you to listen to.

LISTENING EXERCISES
This symbol indicates that you should listen to an audio track in order to answer the questions in the exercise.

FREE AUDIO
website and app
www.dkefe.com

Answers

The book is designed to make it easy to monitor your progress. Answers are provided for every exercise, so you can see how well you have understood and remembered the idioms and expressions you have learned.

Exercise numbers Match these numbers to the number at the top-left corner of each exercise.

Answers Find the answers to every exercise printed at the back of the book.


36

36.4
1 B 2 A 3 B 4 C

36.5
1 She's working hard.
2 We rested.
3 Julie tried her best.
4 Carmen is not working
5 It was hard work.

36.6
1 Leo always goes the ext
customers happy.
2 Akash usually takes 40
his lunch.
3 I'm sorry, I can't talk to
hands full.
4 Celia had to put her he
essay to meet the deadline
5 Brandon is a slacker. He
and ignores the customers.
6 After a long day workin
to put his feet up and watc

Indexes

This book includes two indexes: an index of idioms and expressions, and an index of common words and subjects.

INDEX OF IDIOMS AND EXPRESSIONS
The index of idioms and expressions contains every expression from the teaching spreads, listed in alphabetical order by key word.

M

can't **make** heads or tails of (US) / can't make head or tail of (UK) 31.1
make a beeline for 37.1
make a cake 43.1
make a choice 43.1
make a fresh start 18.1
make a joke 43.1
make a mess 43.1
make a mountain out of a molehill 20.2
make a noise 43.1
make a phone call 43.1
make a pig's ear of something 7.1
make a rod for your own back 22.2
make arrangements 43.1
make a scene 28.1
make ends meet 32.1
make great strides 37.1
make progress 43.1
make some friends 43.1
make someone's blood boil 13.1
make someone's hair stand on end 13.3
make someone's mouth water 29.1
make waves 23.2

keep in **mind** (US) / bear in mind (UK) 14.1
someone's **mind** goes blank 14.1
something slips your **mind** 14.1
speak your **mind** 24.2
spring to **mind** 14.1
great **minds** think alike 31.1
a **minefield** 16.1
a misery guts (UK), *see* a downer (US)
go **missing** 47.1
break the **mold** 31.3
make a mountain out of a **molehill** 20.2
easy **money** 32.1
money doesn't grow on trees 32.1
throw **money** around 32.1
throw **money** down the drain 32.1
once in a blue **moon** 34.1, 54.1
over the **moon** 12.1
moth-eaten 6.1
set the wheels in **motion** 37.1
a **mountain** to climb 20.2
make a **mountain** out of a molehill 20.2
as quiet as a **mouse** 50.2
be born with a silver spoon in your **mouth** 3.3
by word of **mouth** 25.1
foam at the **mouth** 11.2

UK/US idioms If an idiom has a UK or US equivalent, both versions are listed in the index.

Key words Each entry in the index contains a key word from the expression in bold.

Module number Match the number in the index to the module number on the teaching page.

INDEX OF COMMON WORDS AND SUBJECTS
Use this index to find idioms relating to a subject or expressions using a common word.

A

"absolutely" 49.1
advantage and disadvantage 3.3
adverbs, intensifying 49
age 1
agreement 9.1
amount 17.1
anger 13.2
animals 4.2, **7**, 25.2, 41.4, 50.2
appearance 3
arts, the 28
"as" 50.1
authority 38

B

background 3.3
bad things 6
"beat" 52.4
beginning 18.1
behavior 10
body, the 11.1, **15**, 38.2
"borrow" 52.5
business 40, 41

01 Age

1.1 IDIOMS ABOUT AGE

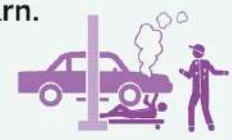
After climbing the hill, I realized I'm no spring chicken!

no longer young



My assistant is a bit wet behind the ears. He still has a lot to learn.

young and inexperienced



Becky's worried she's getting on in years after spotting more gray hairs. (US)

getting old



Sanjay feels as old as the hills when his kids talk about technology.

extremely old



These bright young things have just started college.

young, enthusiastic, fashionable, or ambitious people



This TV show bridges the generation gap. The whole family loves it.

appeals to people of all ages



1.2 EXPRESSIONS WITH "AGE"

My grandpa got married again at the ripe old age of 92.

very old age



Brendan's teacher told him to start acting his age.

behaving in a way appropriate to his age



Sally first sang on stage at the tender age of 7.

very young age



I feel my age when I go shopping with my children.

am conscious of being older



I've just turned 40, and I'm in the prime of my life. I always go to the gym after work.

at my best; healthy and successful



Katie started learning piano when she was knee-high to a grasshopper.

very young



I'm too long in the tooth to try out skydiving.

old



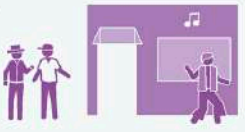
Derek and Joan spent their twilight years traveling the world.

the last years of someone's life



I can't come to that nightclub with you! I'm over the hill.

old; past my best years



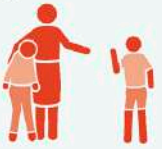
Angela might be 84, but she is still young at heart.

youthful, despite being old



Damien's at that awkward age and finds it hard to talk to people.

the period of adolescence when people feel very self-conscious



In many countries, there is a big celebration when young people come of age.

reach maturity, or have the same legal rights as adults



Many singers' voices improve with age.

get better as they get older



Stephen has reached the great age of 100.

very old age



Aa 1.3 WRITE THE IDIOMS FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS

YOUNG	OLD
bright young things	

no spring chicken ~~bright young things~~ tender age

over the hill knee-high to a grasshopper great age

1.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



I've just turned 40, and I'm *in the prime of my life*. I always go to the gym after work.



3 My grandpa got married again at the _____ of 92.



1 Becky's worried she's _____ after spotting more gray hairs.



4 This TV show _____ _____. The whole family loves it.



2 Damien's at _____ and finds it hard to talk to people.



5 I _____ when I go shopping with my children.

Aa 1.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Brendan's teacher told him to start **playing his age**.
Brendan's teacher told him to start acting his age.



1. I'm too **long in the mouth** to try out skydiving.



2. My assistant is a bit **wet behind the neck**. He still has a lot to learn.



3. Derek and Joan spent their **midnight years** traveling the world.



4. In many countries, there is a big celebration when young people **arrive of age**.



5. Angela might be 84, but she is still **young at mind**.



6. Sanjay feels **as old as the mountains** when his kids talk about technology.



Aa 1.6 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

no longer young = n o s p r i n g c h i c k e n

1. get better as they get older = i _ _ _ _ _ _ w _ _ _ a _ _
2. old; past my best years = o _ _ _ t _ _ h _ _ _
3. very old age = g _ _ _ _ a _ _
4. the last years of someone's life = t _ _ _ _ _ _ _ y _ _ _ _
5. youthful, despite being old = y _ _ _ _ a _ h _ _ _ _
6. very young age = t _ _ _ _ _ a _ _

02 Friends and family

2.1 FRIENDSHIP

Harper regrets **losing touch with** all her old school friends.

no longer being in contact with



I think Claire's found **a soulmate**. Both she and Dan love reading.

the perfect person to be a friend or partner



I've **kept in touch with** Lin since we left college 25 years ago.

continued to be in contact with



Marie and Pierre met through Isaac, **a mutual friend** of theirs.

a shared friend of two people



Ramón and Tara **get on like a house on fire**. They're always talking and laughing.

get along extremely well; have a very good relationship



Mia and I have **drifted apart** since she left our choir and started boxing instead.

slowly become less friendly or close to each other



I **struck up a friendship with** Pete while we were in cooking class last year.

became friends with



My wife and I **hit it off** immediately when we first met at a country music concert.

became friends very quickly



Donna was **a fair-weather friend**. She wouldn't help when my house flooded.

a friend who deserts you when you have difficulties



Cy and I **got off on the wrong foot** on our date. He was an hour late and forgot my name.

started our relationship badly



2.2 FAMILY

Bob reminds me so much of his father. He is **a chip off the old block**.

very similar to someone in his family



We're moving to a bigger house because we're hoping to **start a family** soon.

have children



Jade is **a family friend**. She grew up on the same street as us.

someone who has known your family for some time



I am close to my **immediate family**, but rarely see my other relatives.

close family, such as parents, sons, daughters, brothers, and sisters



Uncle Tony is **the black sheep of the family**. He's been to prison three times.

someone who brings shame to the family or is the odd one in the family



We're **bringing up** our children to be kind to animals.

teaching a child how to behave



That vase is **a family heirloom**. Lou's grandfather bought it in China in 1893.

an object that that has been passed down through the generations of a family



Boris often asks members of his **extended family** to help with childcare.

wider family, such as grandparents, cousins, nephews, and nieces



We're **a close-knit family**. We always meet up for birthdays and holidays.

a loyal and supportive family



Curly hair **runs in our family**, and my daughter, mom, and I all have it.

is a common feature in our family



Aa 2.3 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT IDIOMS

close family, such as parents, sons, daughters, brothers, and sisters

1. an object that has been passed down through the generations of a family
2. a friend who deserts you when you have difficulties
3. no longer being in contact with
4. the perfect person to be a friend or partner
5. slowly become less friendly or close to each other
6. wider family, such as grandparents, cousins, nephews, and nieces

a fair-weather friend

immediate family

losing touch with

a family heirloom

a soulmate

extended family

drifted apart

2.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM



A ☐



B ☐



C 1



D ☐



E ☐



F ☐



G ☐



H ☐

Aa 2.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

Bob reminds me so much of his father. He is a chip off the old ~~brick~~ / block / ~~log~~.

1. We're moving to a bigger house because we're hoping to **begin** / **start** / **have** a family soon.
2. My wife and I **struck** / **hit** / **beat** it off immediately when we first met at a country music concert.
3. Uncle Tony is the black **sheep** / **horse** / **cow** of the family. He's been to prison three times.
4. Cy and I got off on the wrong **hand** / **leg** / **foot** on our date. He was an hour late and forgot my name.
5. Ramón and Tara get on like a **house** / **barn** / **home** on fire. They're always talking and laughing.

Aa 2.6 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



My wife and I *hit it off* immediately when we first met at a country music concert.



3. Curly hair _____, and my daughter, mom, and I all have it.



1. We're _____ our children to be kind to animals.



4. I've _____ Lin since we left college 25 years ago.



2. Marie and Pierre met through Isaac, _____ of theirs.



5. Jade is _____. She grew up on the same street as us.

03 Appearance and background

3.1 APPEARANCE

Leo **bears a striking resemblance** to his grandfather.

looks extremely similar



Mateo and his brother Lucas are **like two peas in a pod**. I can't tell them apart.

extremely similar to each other



Karen is **the spitting image of** that actor in the new sci-fi film.

almost identical to



You must eat something! You're **all skin and bones**.

too thin



Oscar is only 25, but he's already **getting thin on top**. (US)

going bald



Rita **looked like she'd seen a ghost** after I told her my news.

looked very scared or shocked



Milan returned home with **five o'clock shadow** after a long day at the office.

the beginning of a beard



Rachel **looked like a drowned rat** after she got caught in the rain on her way home.

was very wet



Edie **looks like butter wouldn't melt in her mouth**, but she's actually really naughty.

looks innocent, like she wouldn't do anything bad



My aunt believed in **keeping up appearances** despite having little money.

pretending that things are going well



3.2 STYLE AND DRESS

Domenica looked the part for her first day of work at the bank.

was dressed in the right way



George arrived at the restaurant immaculately groomed for his date with Cassie.

elegantly dressed and well presented



Clara looked like a million bucks when she arrived for her wedding. (US)

looked extremely glamorous



Nalini never has a hair out of place. She cares a lot about her appearance.

is extremely neat and well groomed



3.3 BACKGROUND, ADVANTAGE, AND DISADVANTAGE

Rebecca has blue blood. Her great-grandmother was a princess.

is descended from important people or aristocracy



Philip was born with a silver spoon in his mouth. He grew up in a castle in France.

was born into a wealthy family



My aunt is a pillar of the community. She supports charities and attends local events.

an important or well-respected person



Maxine is such a highflier. She's been promoted twice this year and is only 23. (US)

a very talented and successful person



Danika's parents don't approve of Bob because he's from the wrong side of the tracks.

the wrong social background or part of town



My parents didn't have two pennies to rub together, but we still had lots of fun.

were very poor



Aa 3.4 READ THE STATEMENTS AND MARK THE CORRECT MEANING

My parents didn't have two pennies to rub together, but we still had lots of fun.
My parents were rich. ☐ **My parents were poor.** ☑

1. My aunt is a pillar of the community. She supports charities and attends local events.
My aunt is a well-respected person. ☐ **My aunt is a dishonest person.** ☐

2. Philip was born with a silver spoon in his mouth. He grew up in a castle in France.
Philip has always been wealthy. ☐ **Philip has always been generous.** ☐

3. Danika's parents don't approve of Bob because he's from the wrong side of the tracks.
Bob is a train driver. ☐ **Bob is from the wrong social background.** ☐

4. Clara looked like a million bucks when she arrived for her wedding.
Clara looked extremely nervous. ☐ **Clara looked extremely glamorous.** ☐

5. Rebecca has blue blood. Her great-grandmother was a princess.
She is descended from important people. ☐ **She is a princess.** ☐

Aa 3.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

George arrived at the restaurant **immaculately styled** for his date with Cassie.
George arrived at the restaurant immaculately groomed for his date with Cassie.



1. Edie **looks like ice cream wouldn't melt in her mouth**, but she's actually really naughty.



2. Oscar is only 25, but he's already **getting slim on top**.



3. My aunt believed in **holding up appearances** despite having little money.



4. Nalini **never has a hair out of sight**. She cares a lot about her appearance.



5. Milan returned home with **four o'clock shadow** after a long day at the office.

3.6 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



Leo *bears a striking resemblance* to his grandfather.

1 

Domenica _____ for her first day of work at the bank.

2 

Clara _____ when she arrived for her wedding.

3 

Mateo and his brother Lucas are _____. I can't tell them apart.

4 

Karen is _____ that actor in the new sci-fi film.

5 

Rita _____ after I told her my news.

6 

Rachel _____ after she got caught in the rain on her way home.

3.7 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

extremely similar to each other = l i k e t w o p e a s i n a p o d

1 too thin = a _ _ s _ _ _ a _ _ b _ _ _ _

2 almost identical to = t _ _ s _ _ _ _ _ _ _ i _ _ _ _ o _

3 going bald = g _ _ _ _ _ _ t _ _ _ o _ t _ _

4 the beginning of a beard = f _ _ _ o' _ _ _ _ _ s _ _ _ _ _

5 a very talented and successful person = a h _ _ _ f _ _ _ _

04 Personality traits

4.1 DESCRIBING PERSONALITY

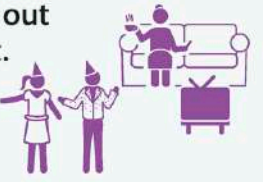
Lucia has a vivid imagination. Her artworks are so original.

an ability to think of exciting images and ideas



Norah is such a fuddy-duddy. She never wants to come out with us on Saturday night.

someone who is unwilling to try new things



Gustav has a selfish streak. He won't share his cookies with his friends.

a tendency to be selfish



Arturo is so two-faced. He said he liked my haircut but told his friends he hated it.

insincere or hypocritical



Chetan is as bold as brass. He walked up to the actor and asked for an autograph.

very confident



My dad's just an average Joe. He enjoys burgers and fries, and loves watching baseball. (US)

a stereotypical man who has simple tastes



It was great to see Jasmine at the party. She's always a barrel of laughs.

a fun person or situation



Bob is such a crybaby. He was very upset about not getting a perfect score.

someone who cries a lot without good reason



Zoe loves proving how much she knows. She's too smart for her own good.

annoyingly proud of her intelligence or knowledge



Noah is really down to earth. He earns lots of money, but he lives in a little cottage.

practical and unpretentious



4.2 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT ANIMALS

I know Rex looks a bit scary, but he wouldn't hurt a fly.

is completely harmless



Claire is a social butterfly. She's always going to parties.

a very sociable person



My uncle's a lone wolf. He lives on his own in a cabin in the forest.

someone who prefers to live or work alone



Tony wouldn't say boo to a goose. He gets really shy when he talks to customers. (UK)

is very timid and nervous



Don't be afraid of Linda. Her bark is worse than her bite.

She's not as scary as she seems.



Ben never told us he could tap dance. He is such a dark horse.

someone who hides a surprising skill or quality



4.3 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT FOOD

Jim's a good egg. He helped me to move last week.

an honest, reliable, or considerate person



Hassan is the salt of the earth. I saw him help an old lady cross the road.

kind, honest, and unpretentious



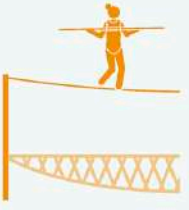
Debbie's a tough cookie. She doesn't mind when people criticize her work.

determined and physically or emotionally strong



Kirsty remained as cool as a cucumber throughout her performance.

calm and relaxed



Aa 4.4 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



Ben never told us he could tap dance. He is such a dark sheep. ☐
Ben never told us he could tap dance. He is such a dark horse. ☑

1 

It was great to see Jasmine at the party. She's always a barrel of laughs. ☐
It was great to see Jasmine at the party. She's always a tub of laughs. ☐

2 

Bob is such a crying baby. He was very upset about not getting a perfect score. ☐
Bob is such a crybaby. He was very upset about not getting a perfect score. ☐

3 

Don't be afraid of Linda. Her bite is worse than her bark. ☐
Don't be afraid of Linda. Her bark is worse than her bite. ☐

4 

Jim's a good egg. He helped me to move last week. ☐
Jim's a good cheese. He helped me to move last week. ☐

5 

Gustav has a selfish streak. He won't share his cookies with his friends. ☐
Gustav has a selfish line. He won't share his cookies with his friends. ☐

6 

Debbie's a tough cake. She doesn't mind when people criticize her work. ☐
Debbie's a tough cookie. She doesn't mind when people criticize her work. ☐

4.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

A Lucia has a vivid imagination. Her artworks are so original. ☐

B Chetan is as bold as brass. He walked up to the actor and asked for an autograph. ☐

C My uncle's a lone wolf. He lives on his own in a cabin in the forest. ☐

D Bob is such a crybaby. He was very upset about not getting a perfect score. 1

E I know Rex looks a bit scary, but he wouldn't hurt a fly. ☐

F Zoe loves proving how much she knows. She's too smart for her own good. ☐

G Claire is a social butterfly. She's always going to parties. ☐

H Kirsty remained as cool as a cucumber throughout her performance. ☐

Aa 4.6 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



My dad's just an average Joe. He enjoys burgers and fries, and he loves watching baseball.

1 

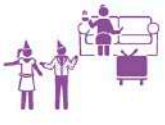
Hassan is the salt of the earth. I saw him help an old lady cross the road.

2 

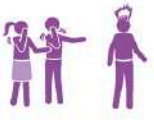
Noah is really down to earth. He earns lots of money, but he lives in a little cottage.

3 

Arturo is so two-faced. He said he liked my haircut but told his friends he hated it.

4 

Tony wouldn't say boo to a goose. He gets really shy when he talks to customers.

5 

Norah is such a fuddy-duddy. She never wants to come out with us on Saturday night.

Aa 4.7 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

someone who is unwilling to try new things = *a fuddy-duddy*

1 She's not as scary as she seems. = _____

2 calm and relaxed = _____

3 very confident = _____

4 a fun person or situation = _____

5 is completely harmless = _____

05 Good things

5.1 IDIOMS FOR PRAISING THINGS

My kids think this TV show is **the best thing since sliced bread**.

extremely good



Marcelo **stole the show** with his amazing singing.

was the best, or attracted the most praise



The ice cream at Giuseppe's parlor really is **the bee's knees**!

the very best



My new TV is **miles ahead of** my old one.

much more advanced than



The workmen have done a **first-class** job on our kitchen. It looks beautiful.

superb



The view from the top of the mountain is totally **out of this world**. You can see for miles.

amazing



Francisco **thinks the world of** his grandson. He loves spending time with him.

really likes or admires



World-class athletes need to train for a few hours every day.

among the best in the world



We had a wonderful boat trip. **The icing on the cake** was seeing some dolphins.

the best part of a good experience



Elisa just moved into the house **of her dreams**. It's a fabulous lakeside villa.

that she has fantasized about having



Walking to work gives me **the best of both worlds**. It helps me save money and get fit.

the benefits of two different things at the same time



Losing my office job was **a blessing in disguise**. My new job is much more interesting.

something that seems bad, but is actually good



Chan's store only sells watches that are **top of the line**. (US)

the best quality



The burgers in Max's diner are **to die for**. And they're huge!

amazing



The gallery has a **mind-blowing** collection of modern art.

amazing



Laura's play has received **rave reviews**. The critics loved it!

excellent reviews



Javier's performance will be **a tough act to follow**. It was incredible.

difficult to beat



Abel is a **top-notch** reporter. He's interviewed some really famous actors.

highest quality



The crème de la crème of the fashion world were at the launch party.

the very best people



Karolina's cake is **second to none**. It looks beautiful, and it tastes delicious.

far better than any others



Aa 5.2 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

follow | a | act | tough | to

Javier's performance will be *a* *tough* *act* *to* *follow*. It was incredible.

best | sliced | the | thing | bread | since

1 My kids think this TV show is _____.

cake | The | the | icing | on

2 We had a wonderful boat trip. _____ was seeing some dolphins.

line | of | top | the

3 Chan's store only sells watches that are _____.

de | crème | la | The | crème

4 _____ of the fashion world were at the launch party.

5.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM



A ☐



B ☐



C 1



D ☐



E ☐



F ☐

Aa 5.4 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE IDIOMS TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	top of	of both worlds
1	out of	to none
2	the best	the line
3	second	knees
4	stole the	this world
5	the crème de	in disguise
6	the bee's	la crème
7	a blessing	show

Aa 5.5 MATCH THE IDIOMS TO THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

	second to none	excellent reviews
1	top-notch	really likes or admires
2	the icing on the cake	far better than any others
3	rave reviews	that she has fantasized about having
4	thinks the world of	the best part of a good experience
5	of her dreams	highest quality

Aa 5.6 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



Elisa just moved into the house *of her* *dreams*. It's a fabulous lakeside villa.



3 _____ of the fashion world were at the launch party.



1 _____ athletes need to train for a few hours every day.



4 Walking to work gives me _____ _____. It helps me save money and get fit.



2 Marcelo _____ with his amazing singing.



5 The burgers in Max's diner are _____ _____. And they're huge!

06 Bad things

6.1 IDIOMS FOR CRITICIZING THINGS

Pete's habit of dropping litter **leaves a bad taste in my mouth**.

makes me feel very uncomfortable



The weather in Hawaii **didn't live up to expectations**. It rained every day.

was not as good as expected



The clothes in this store are **second rate**. They don't last very long.

low-quality



Country music is **not my cup of tea**. I prefer rock music.

not something I enjoy



I'm afraid this product just **isn't up to scratch**, Kyle. (UK)

isn't good enough



Noah's old car is **past its prime**. He's been driving it for years.

in a bad condition, or too old



I know everyone else loves it, but this book is **not all that it's cracked up to be**.

not as good as everyone says it is



The museum in my town is **nothing to write home about**. There are very few exhibits.

not very impressive



The hotel was **cheap and nasty**. There were cockroaches in my room. (UK)

affordable but low-quality



I was stuck in traffic for three hours on a boiling hot day. It was **a fate worse than death**!

a very unpleasant experience



Marco's suit has seen better days. He should buy a new one.

is in a bad condition



Watching golf on TV is so boring. It's like watching paint dry.

extremely boring



His voice is OK, but he's not going to set the world on fire.

not going to be very exciting or successful



It's still rough around the edges, but this is my design for the park.

not perfect; in need of more work



It's time you got rid of that moth-eaten old sofa of yours.

shabby; in a bad condition



Rita's TV is on its last legs. She's had it for over 10 years.

likely to stop working soon



I told my roommate to move out. The last straw was when she broke my favorite mug.

the last in a series of events that makes a bad situation impossible to tolerate



We had been really looking forward to the meal, but thought the food was a let-down.

a disappointment



Sales fell short of expectations last month. We need to do better this month.

were not as good as expected



My old desktop computer is past its sell-by date. It takes a long time to start up.

in need of replacing



Aa 6.2 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT IDIOMS

	makes me feel very uncomfortable	leaves a bad taste in my mouth
1	affordable but low-quality	cheap and nasty
2	extremely boring	like watching paint dry
3	in need of replacing	past its sell-by date
4	a very unpleasant experience	a fate worse than death
5	not something I enjoy	not my cup of tea
6	not perfect; in need of more work	rough around the edges

Aa 6.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



Marco's suit has seen better **days** / ~~**times**~~ / ~~**years**~~. He should buy a new one.

1 

The museum in my town is nothing to **write** / **call** / **go** home about. There are very few exhibits.

2 

The weather in Hawaii didn't **get** / **go** / **live** up to expectations. It rained every day.

3 

Rita's TV is on its last **feet** / **legs** / **stand**. She's had it for over 10 years.

4 

The clothes in this store are second **class** / **quality** / **rate**. They don't last very long.

5 

Pete's habit of dropping litter leaves a bad **flavor** / **taste** / **meal** in my mouth.

6.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



It's still *rough around the edges*, but this is my design for the park.



3 I know everyone else loves it, but this book is _____.



1 I told my roommate to move out. _____ _____ was when she broke my favorite mug.



4 I'm afraid this product just _____ _____, Kyle.



2 Sales _____ last month. We need to do better this month.



5 His voice is OK, but he's _____ _____.

6.5 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

not something I enjoy = n o t m y c u p o f t e a

1 shabby; in a bad condition = m _ _ _ - e _ _ _ _ _

2 a disappointment = a l _ _ - d _ _ _ _

3 in a bad condition, or too old = p _ _ _ _ i _ _ p _ _ _ _ _

4 low-quality = s _ _ _ _ _ _ r _ _ _

5 affordable but low-quality = c _ _ _ _ _ a _ _ n _ _ _ _

07 Animals

7.1 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT ANIMALS

Tim is such a scaredy-cat. He's terrified of spiders.

a person who is very easily scared



I don't think you're really too sick to go to school. You always cry wolf.

pretend there's danger or something wrong when there isn't



Clarita's new apartment is tiny. There's not enough room to swing a cat.

very little space



My colleagues all have terrible colds. They're dropping like flies!

becoming sick, or stopping doing something, in large numbers



You're barking up the wrong tree if you think I can help you with your homework. I'm terrible at science.

wasting effort by following the wrong course of action



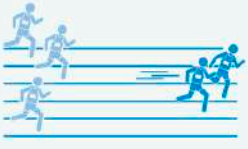
Our falling profits are the elephant in the room at every team meeting.

a problem that everyone pretends to ignore



The half-mile run was a two-horse race between Beatriz and Maria.

a competition with only two clear possible winners



I chickened out of diving off the top board in the pool. It was too high!

was too scared to



Flo looked like a deer in headlights when I caught her reading my diary. (US)

too shocked or frightened to move



I told my boss I won't finish my report today, but she still keeps badgering me about it.

repeatedly telling me to do something



Lech is a night owl. He never goes to bed before midnight.

someone who likes to stay up late at night



Bill looked like the cat that got the cream when he won the competition.

very happy, proud, or satisfied



It really gets my goat when someone eats smelly food on the train.

irritates me



We had a bird's-eye view of the city from the hot-air balloon.

a long-distance view from above



Rachel always gets on her high horse about being a vegetarian. It's so annoying!

adopts a morally superior attitude



You can do anything now that you've finished college. The world is your oyster.

You have lots of opportunities.



Frank ate the lion's share of the cake. There wasn't enough for us!

the largest part



Ruby is a one-trick pony. She's a great singer, but she can't dance or act.

someone with only one talent or skill



I tried to fix the photocopier, but I've really made a pig's ear of it. (UK)

done it very badly



Jenny didn't mind when her friends laughed at her coat. It was water off a duck's back.

not at all upsetting



7.2 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- A I don't think you're really too sick to go to school. You always cry wolf. ☐
- B Lech is a night owl. He never goes to bed before midnight. ☐
- C Frank ate the lion's share of the cake. There wasn't enough for us! ☐
- D Jenny didn't mind when her friends laughed at her coat. It was water off a duck's back. ☐
- E I told my boss I won't finish my report today, but she still keeps badgering me about it. 1
- F The half-mile run was a two-horse race between Beatriz and Maria. ☐

7.3 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



You're barking up the wrong tree if you think I can help you with your homework. I'm terrible at science.

1 

Jenny didn't mind when her friends laughed at her coat. It was water off a duck's back.

2 

It really gets my goat when someone eats smelly food on the train.

3 

Our falling profits are the elephant in the room at every team meeting.

4 

Rachel always gets on her high horse about being a vegetarian. It's so annoying!

5 

Bill looked like the cat that got the cream when he won the competition.

Aa 7.4 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



Frank ate the **lion's** / ~~**tiger's**~~ / ~~**bear's**~~ share of the cake. There wasn't enough for us!

1. 

I tried to fix the photocopier, but I've really made a **cow's** / **sheep's** / **pig's** ear of it.

2. 

My colleagues all have terrible colds. They're **dropping** / **falling** / **buzzing** like flies!

3. 

Ruby is a one-trick **horse** / **pony** / **donkey**. She's a great singer, but she can't dance or act.

4. 

I **pigged** / **chickened** / **cowed** out of diving off the top board in the pool. It was too high!

5. 

Clarita's new apartment is tiny. There's not enough room to swing a **mouse** / **frog** / **cat**.

Aa 7.5 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

someone with only one talent or skill = *a one-trick pony*

1. irritates me = _____
2. very little space = _____
3. a long-distance view from above = _____
4. a person who is very easily scared = _____
5. You have lots of opportunities. = _____
6. too shocked or frightened to move = _____

08 Food

8.1 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT FOOD AND DRINK

We thought our walk would be really hilly, but the land was as flat as a pancake.

very flat



I don't like my job, but it puts food on the table.

provides enough money to pay for the most important things



We're usually packed like sardines on the bus to work in the morning.

standing very close to each other



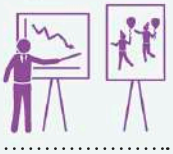
Sharon always spoon-feeds her staff. She tells them exactly what to do.

gives too much help to



Our boss tried to sugarcoat the news that we wouldn't get a bonus by saying we'd have a summer party.

make something bad sound better than it is



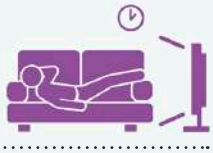
Don't get so upset about burning the cookies. It's no use crying over spilled milk.

getting upset about something that has already happened



Jennifer is such a couch potato. She never goes out and watches TV all weekend instead.

a lazy person who watches too much television



Damien makes coffee for his boss every morning. He knows what side his bread is buttered on!

knows who to please in order to benefit himself



My granddaughter is the apple of my eye. I'm so proud of her.

a person I am very fond or proud of



I don't know whether to apply for this job. It looks really interesting, but it pays peanuts.

the wage or salary is very low



I bought so many clothes that I can't afford a vacation. I suppose you can't have your cake and eat it, too.

you can't enjoy the benefits of something without its disadvantages



I know Aiden's always late, but arriving late for his own wedding takes the cake! (US)

is particularly bad





I felt warm and toasty sitting in front of the fire. (US)

very warm and comfortable



Asher is such a butterfingers. He is always dropping things.

a clumsy person who often drops things



The head of sales said he would double our profits, so he had to eat humble pie when he told us they had fallen.

publicly admit to being wrong or having failed



Fiona told me she doesn't like my new scooter. I think it's just sour grapes.

a jealous and bitter attitude



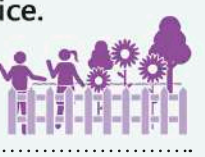
I'm really stressed! I think I bit off more than I could chew when I took this promotion.

took on more responsibility than I could manage



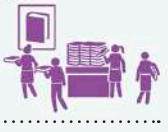
I wanted Jo to water my plants when I was on vacation, so I buttered her up by saying her backyard looked nice.

praised or flattered her so she would do me a favor



Copies of Sadie's new novel are selling like hotcakes after it got great reviews.

selling quickly in large numbers



You have to walk on eggshells around Dylan. He gets upset so easily.

be very careful not to cause offense



Aa 8.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE STATEMENTS TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	Sharon always spoon-feeds her staff.	on the bus to work in the morning.
1	We're usually packed like sardines	but the land was as flat as a pancake.
2	My granddaughter is the apple of my eye.	She tells them exactly what to do.
3	We thought our walk would be really hilly,	He gets upset so easily.
4	I felt warm and toasty	I'm so proud of her.
5	I don't like my job,	sitting in front of the fire.
6	You have to walk on eggshells around Dylan.	but it puts food on the table.

Aa 8.3 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



- Don't get so upset about burning the cookies. It's no use crying over spilled water. ☐
- Don't get so upset about burning the cookies. It's no use crying over spilled milk. ☑

1 

- I know Aiden's always late, but arriving late for his own wedding takes the bread! ☐
- I know Aiden's always late, but arriving late for his own wedding takes the cake! ☐

2 

- I'm really stressed! I think I bit off more than I could chew when I took this promotion. ☐
- I'm really stressed! I think I bit off more than I could eat when I took this promotion. ☐

3 

- Fiona told me she doesn't like my new scooter. I think it's just sour grapes. ☐
- Fiona told me she doesn't like my new scooter. I think it's just bitter grapes. ☐

4 

- Asher is such a butterhands. He is always dropping things. ☐
- Asher is such a butterfingers. He is always dropping things. ☐

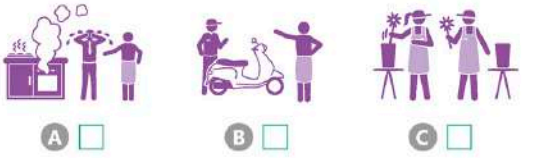
5 

- Copies of Sadie's new novel are selling like hotbuns after it got great reviews. ☐
- Copies of Sadie's new novel are selling like hotcakes after it got great reviews. ☐

8.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE CORRECT PICTURE FOR EACH SENTENCE YOU HEAR



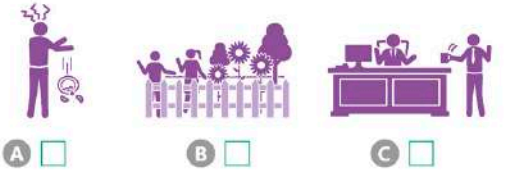
3



1



4



2



5



Aa 8.5 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

took on more responsibility than I could manage = *bit off more than I could chew*

1. publicly admit to being wrong or having failed = _____
2. a lazy person who watches too much television = _____
3. gives too much help to = _____
4. be very careful not to cause offense = _____
5. make something bad sound better than it is = _____

09 Agreeing and disagreeing

9.1 AGREEMENT AND UNDERSTANDING

We're **on the same page** about who should get this job.

in agreement



Samira has been **given the go-ahead** to play tennis after her injury.

given permission or approval



It's great to work with the creative people in this team. We're all **on the same wavelength**.

similar in terms of thoughts, ideas, or attitude



The government has **given the green light to** the construction of a new train station.

given permission for



Fran's dad **gave her the thumbs-up** to go out with her friends.

gave her permission



I'm glad my boss and I **see eye to eye** about recycling in the office.

agree fully or have a similar attitude



9.3 COMPROMISE

We **struck a deal** with the clients after we offered them a discount.

reached an agreement



We found **the middle ground** about how much to spend on our new car.

a position between two different opinions, or a compromise



Diana and I **reached a compromise** about what movie to watch tonight.

came to an agreement



My son wanted to stay out all night. I **met him halfway** and let him stay out until midnight.

made a compromise



9.2 DISAGREEMENT AND CONFLICT

Nelson and Carole are **at odds** about which car to buy.

unable to agree



Don **jumped down my throat** when I suggested he clean the kitchen.

reacted angrily



My girlfriend and I have **agreed to disagree** about what to do on vacation.

accepted each other's differing opinion



Who takes the dog for a walk is **a bone of contention** for our kids.

a subject that people argue about regularly



My wife **read me the riot act** for forgetting to lock the door again.

severely reprimanded me



Lenka and I **fought like cats and dogs** when we were children.

argued all the time



The negotiating teams stayed up all night **hammering out a deal**.

reaching an agreement after a long discussion



My neighbor and I have **buried the hatchet** after arguing about the parking.

ended an argument that has lasted a long time



I tried to **smooth things over** between Pari and Toni after their argument.

make a problem or conflict feel less serious



After arguing with Dan, Cy **held out an olive branch** and bought him a drink.

did something to end a conflict



Aa 9.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

I'm glad my boss and I **see face to face** about recycling in the office.
I'm glad my boss and I see eye to eye about recycling in the office.

1. My neighbor and I have **buried the ax** after arguing about the parking.

2. The negotiating teams stayed up all night **drilling out a deal**.

3. The government has **given the red light to** the construction of a new train station.

4. My girlfriend and I have **agreed to change** about what to do on vacation.

9.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM


A ☐


B 1


C ☐


D ☐


E ☐


F ☐


G ☐


H ☐


I ☐

Aa 9.6 READ THE LETTER AND CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS

Hi Fiona,
How are you? I had some problems at work recently. My boss and I are usually on the same page / ~~sheet~~ about work, but we were at offs / odds about my hours. She jumped down my mouth / throat when I said I couldn't work this weekend. We found the middle / central ground when I agreed to stay late on Friday.
See you soon,
Pablo

Aa 9.7 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Fran's dad gave her the thumbs-up to go out with her friends.

1 

My son wanted to stay out all night. I met him halfway and let him stay out until midnight.

2 

Lenka and I fought like cats and dogs when we were children.

3 

Diana and I reached a compromise about what movie to watch tonight.

4 

Samira has been given the go-ahead to play tennis after her injury.

5 

I tried to smooth things over between Pari and Toni after their argument.

Aa 9.8 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

reacted angrily = j u m p e d d o w n m y t h r o a t

1 did something to end a conflict = h _ _ _ o _ _ a _ o _ _ _ _ _ b _ _ _ _ _ _

2 in agreement = o _ t _ _ s _ _ _ p _ _ _

3 unable to agree = a _ o _ _ _

4 reached an agreement = s _ _ _ _ _ a d _ _ _

5 gave her permission = g _ _ _ h _ _ t _ _ t _ _ _ _ _ - u _

10 Behavior

10.1 SYMPATHY AND KINDNESS

Yulia offered to **lend a hand** with the dishes after the party.

help



I really **feel for** Mario. He has to work so hard in the kitchen.

sympathize with



Semir is **generous to a fault**. He invited us into his home for a wonderful meal.

extremely generous



Yoshiko **offered a sympathetic ear** when my cat went missing.

offered to listen to someone's problems



Alex is so **big hearted**. She bought me a beautiful vase for my new apartment.

kind and generous



10.2 TREATING PEOPLE BADLY

Pedro quit his job at the store, **leaving me in the lurch**.

leaving me to deal with a difficult situation



Phil **gave me a hard time** about being late for work again.

made me feel guilty, or told me off



The boss makes the trainees stay until 11 most nights. She **treats them like dirt**!

treats them very badly



Laughing at Sandy's new dress was **below the belt**.

unnecessarily cruel or unkind



Selma **let us down** when she canceled the concert at the last minute.

disappointed us, or failed to support us



10.3 TEASING PEOPLE

Paulina poked fun at Mirek's new hairstyle.

laughed at or made jokes about



My friends ribbed me for having such an old phone. (US)

teased me



Aziz told me he'd crashed my car, but he was pulling my leg.

joking, or telling an untrue story for fun



Brad loves playing practical jokes on his brother.

playing tricks on people to make them look foolish



10.4 EXPRESSIONS WITH "BEHAVE" AND "BEHAVIOR"

The children were very well behaved during the performance.

polite or obedient



My dog behaved beautifully when I took him on the train.

behaved perfectly



Henry can't control his badly behaved students.

naughty or disobedient



I was on my best behavior when I met my boyfriend's parents.

behaving extremely well or politely



Jean behaved out of character at the office party. She's normally so quiet!

behaved in an unusual way



Margo explained to her daughter that drawing on the walls was unacceptable behavior.

bad or offensive behavior



Aa 10.5 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



Phil gave me a hard time about being late for work again. ☑
Phil gave me a nasty time about being late for work again. ☐

1 

Yoshiko offered a sympathetic listen when my cat went missing. ☐
Yoshiko offered a sympathetic ear when my cat went missing. ☐

2 

Aziz told me he'd crashed my car, but he was pulling my leg. ☐
Aziz told me he'd crashed my car, but he was pulling my arm. ☐

3 

I was on my best behavior when I met my boyfriend's parents. ☐
I was on my good behavior when I met my boyfriend's parents. ☐

4 

Pedro quit his job at the store, leaving me in the dumps. ☐
Pedro quit his job at the store, leaving me in the lurch. ☐

5 

Jean behaved out of character at the office party. She's normally so quiet! ☐
Jean behaved out of person at the office party. She's normally so quiet! ☐

6 

Paulina poked laughs at Mirek's new hairstyle. ☐
Paulina poked fun at Mirek's new hairstyle. ☐

Aa 10.6 WRITE THE IDIOMS FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS

GOOD BEHAVIOR	BAD BEHAVIOR
generous to a fault	

below the belt ~~generous to a fault~~ big hearted treats them like dirt
behaved beautifully let us down unacceptable behavior lend a hand

10.7 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- A The children were very well behaved during the performance. ☐
- B Laughing at Sandy's new dress was below the belt. ☐
- C Selma let us down when she canceled the concert at the last minute. ☐
- D Margo explained to her daughter that drawing on the walls was unacceptable behavior. 1
- E Yulia offered to lend a hand with the dishes after the party. ☐

Aa 10.8 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



Laughing at Sandy's new dress was *below* *the belt* .



3 My friends _____ for having such an old phone.



1 Henry can't control his _____ _____ students.



4 My dog _____ when I took him on the train.



2 I really _____ Mario. He has to work so hard in the kitchen.



5 Brad loves _____ on his brother.

11 Emotions

11.1 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT THE BODY

They can't stop arguing. They're always at each other's throats.

very aggressive and argumentative with each other



You can always tell when he's upset. He wears his heart on his sleeve.

makes his feelings obvious



Caitlin got cold feet about singing karaoke.

became too nervous to do something



Leo cried his eyes out when I said he couldn't have another cookie.

cried uncontrollably



It was a weight off my shoulders when Mark found my cat. She had been missing for a week.

a huge relief



People in my town are up in arms about plans to build a new supermarket.

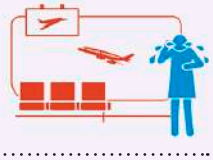
very angry, or protesting against something



11.2 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT COLORS

Liz was feeling blue when her best friend left the country.

feeling sad



My neighbor saw red when I parked in front of his house.

became angry



I was green with envy when Jamila showed me her new house. It was so big!

very jealous



Silvio went as white as a sheet when he got the bad news.

very pale because of shock or fear



When Dylan copied her homework, Zoe was so angry that she was **foaming at the mouth**.

extremely angry



After a long week at work, I **let my hair down** at my best friend's party.

relaxed and enjoyed myself



I was **broken-hearted** when my girlfriend left me.

very upset, usually after the end of a romantic relationship



I get **itchy feet** when I haven't been abroad for a long time.

boredom with being in the same place or situation



I became **tongue-tied** when I had to give a presentation to the board of directors.

too nervous to speak



I was really upset when a customer shouted at me, but I managed to **keep a stiff upper lip**.

appear calm despite being upset



11.3 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT FOOD

The children all **went bananas** when I took them to the playground.

were out of control with excitement



This terrible weather is **driving me nuts**.

annoying me



Akio was **full of beans** when he started his new job at the salon.

very excited and enthusiastic



I **had egg on my face** after I called Jo's new boyfriend Ben. That was her ex-boyfriend's name!

was embarrassed



Aa 11.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

I was **yellow with envy** when Jamila showed me her new house. It was so big!

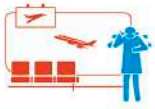


I was green with envy when Jamila showed me her new house. It was so big!

1. I get **itchy legs** when I haven't been abroad for a long time.



2. Liz was **feeling green** when her best friend left the country.



3. When Dylan copied her homework, Zoe was so angry that she was **foaming at the lips**.



4. This terrible weather is **driving me fruit**.



5. My neighbor **saw purple** when I parked in front of his house.



11.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

A. I became tongue-tied when I had to give a presentation to the board of directors. ☐

B. They can't stop arguing. They're always at each other's throats. 1

C. It was a weight off my shoulders when Mark found my cat. She had been missing for a week. ☐

D. I was green with envy when Jamila showed me her new house. It was so big! ☐

E. The children all went bananas when I took them to the playground. ☐

F. Leo cried his eyes out when I said he couldn't have another cookie. ☐

G. You can always tell when he's upset. He wears his heart on his sleeve. ☐

H. Akio was full of beans when he started his new job at the salon. ☐

Aa 11.6 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	People in my town are up in arms	when my girlfriend left me.
1	I was broken-hearted	been abroad for a long time.
2	I get itchy feet when I haven't	about plans to build a new supermarket.
3	Caitlin got cold feet	when I parked in front of his house.
4	The children all went bananas	about singing karaoke.
5	My neighbor saw red	when I took them to the playground.

Aa 11.7 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



It was *a weight off my shoulders* when Mark found my cat. She had been missing for a week.



1 I _____ after I called Jo's new boyfriend Ben. That was her ex-boyfriend's name!



2 After a long week at work, I _____ _____ at my best friend's party.



3 Silvio went _____ when he got the bad news.



4 I was really upset when a customer shouted at me, but I managed to _____.



5 Leo _____ when I said he couldn't have another cookie.

12 Positive emotions

12.1 HAPPINESS

Clare was **on cloud nine** after she was promoted.

delighted, extremely happy



Jack was **on top of the world** when his team won the trophy.

delighted, extremely happy



Dan **grinned from ear to ear** when he read his test results.

smiled with extreme happiness



The news that our profits were up was **music to our ears**.

wonderful news



I was **over the moon** when I won the best actor award.

delighted, extremely happy



Anne is **head over heels** with that boy she met at the festival.

very much in love



12.2 EXPRESSIONS WITH "JOY"

My motorcycle is **my pride and joy**. I clean it every day.

something that makes me happy and is important to me



The kids **jumped for joy** when I brought our new puppy home.

were extremely happy



Brendan **wept with joy** when he won the talent competition.

cried with happiness



The sight of the park in spring is **a joy to behold**.

wonderful to look at



12.3 ENTHUSIASM

Two minutes before the race, the athletes were all raring to go.

eager to start doing something



Salvador loves cooking. He puts his heart and soul into it.

puts a lot of effort and enthusiasm into



Our new intern is such an eager beaver. She works really hard.

an enthusiastic person



Robbie has flung himself into training for the gymnastics competition.

done something with lots of enthusiasm and energy



Clara was bright-eyed and bushy-tailed as she set off on the hike.

full of enthusiasm and energy



12.4 EXCITEMENT

I was on the edge of my seat as the detective revealed the murderer.

waiting with nervous excitement



We waited with bated breath for the judge to announce the winner.

with both anxiety and enthusiasm



The children were bouncing off the walls after a whole day indoors.

too excited and full of energy



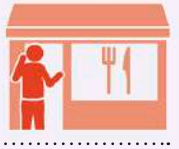
Sally was bursting with excitement as her favorite band came on stage.

extremely excited



Jamal had butterflies in his stomach as he waited for his date outside the restaurant.

was excited and nervous



Aa 12.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

Jack was on top of the ~~earth~~ / **world** / ~~planet~~ when his team won the trophy.

1. The news that our profits were up was **singing** / **noise** / **music** to our ears.
2. Our new intern is such an **eager** / **enthusiastic** / **able** beaver. She works really hard.
3. I was over the **moon** / **world** / **stars** when I won the best actor award.
4. Salvador loves cooking. He puts his **mind** / **heart** / **strength** and soul into it.
5. I was on the edge of my **chair** / **stool** / **seat** as the detective revealed the murderer.

12.6 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



We waited *with bated breath* for the judge to announce the winner.



3 My motorcycle is _____. I clean it every day.



1 The kids _____ when I brought our new puppy home.



4 Jamal _____ as he waited for his date outside the restaurant.



2 Robbie has _____ training for the gymnastics competition.



5 Clara was _____ as she set off on the hike.

Aa 12.7 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

ear | ear | from | grinned | to

Dan *grinned* *from* *ear* *to* *ear* when he read his test results.

the | off | walls | bouncing

1. The children were _____ after a whole day indoors.

ears | to | music | our

2. The news that our profits were up was _____.

world | of | on | the | top

3. Jack was _____ when his team won the trophy.

the | my | edge | seat | on | of

4. I was _____ as the detective revealed the murderer.

a | behold | joy | to

5. The sight of the park in spring is _____.

Aa 12.8 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

too excited and full of energy = b o u n c i n g o f f t h e w a l l s

1. extremely excited = b _ _ _ _ _ _ _ w _ _ _ e _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _
2. delighted, extremely happy = o _ c _ _ _ _ n _ _ _
3. very much in love = h _ _ _ o _ _ _ h _ _ _ _
4. cried with happiness = w _ _ _ w _ _ _ j _ _
5. eager to start doing something = r _ _ _ _ _ _ t _ g _

13 Negative emotions

13.1 SADNESS

Joseph has been **down in the dumps** since his girlfriend left him.

feeling sad



Yannis **had a lump in his throat** when he said goodbye to his son.

felt like he was going to cry



It was **with a heavy heart** that I decided to leave my job at the gallery.

with sadness



Carlos was **reduced to tears** when Marta was mean about his cooking.

upset enough to cry



I've taken you for a day out at the beach. Why are you being such **a downer**? (US)

a grumpy and disagreeable person



13.2 ANGER

It **makes my blood boil** when people litter.

makes me really angry



Jason's loud music is really **driving me crazy**.

annoying me



I **kicked myself** when I realized I had left my bag on the train.

was angry with myself



Dad **hit the roof** when he heard I'd failed my tests again.

quickly became extremely angry



Our boss is **on the warpath** about people leaving their computers on overnight.

angry and ready for conflict



13.3 FEAR

Jen got **that sinking feeling** when she realized she had lost her keys.

the feeling that something bad is going to happen



That horror movie **sent shivers down my spine**. It was so scary!

made me feel very frightened



My blood ran cold when I heard a strange noise outside.

I suddenly felt very afraid



Christine felt **on edge** as she waited to see her dentist.

nervous or anxious



The sight of the old, spooky house **made my hair stand on end**.

made me terrified



Alice was **shaking in her boots** before she did her first bungee jump. (US)

very frightened and nervous



13.4 EMBARRASSMENT

Stella **lost face** when she got the figures wrong in her presentation.

lost respect, or felt embarrassed



Nina **wanted the earth to swallow her up** when her dad showed her boyfriend pictures of her as a baby.

wanted to escape an embarrassing situation



I **almost died of shame** when my girlfriend found me singing in front of the mirror.

was extremely embarrassed



The players left the field **with their tails between their legs** after losing the game.

looking embarrassed or ashamed



Aa 13.5 READ THE STATEMENTS AND MARK THE CORRECT MEANING

Dad hit the roof when he heard I'd failed my tests again.

Dad was happy. ☐
Dad was angry. ☑
Dad was excited. ☐

1. Yannis had a lump in his throat when he said goodbye to his son.
   Yannis was sad. ☐
   Yannis was angry. ☐
   Yannis was afraid. ☐

2. I almost died of shame when my girlfriend found me singing in front of the mirror.
   I was sad. ☐
   I was angry. ☐
   I was embarrassed. ☐

3. It was with a heavy heart that I decided to leave my job at the gallery.
   I was sad. ☐
   I was angry. ☐
   I was afraid. ☐

4. My blood ran cold when I heard a strange noise outside.
   I was angry. ☐
   I was afraid. ☐
   I was embarrassed. ☐

5. The players left the field with their tails between their legs after losing the game.
   They were afraid. ☐
   They were angry. ☐
   They were ashamed. ☐

13.6 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE CORRECT PICTURE FOR EACH SENTENCE YOU HEAR


A ☑ B ☐ C ☐

1. 
   A ☐ B ☐ C ☐

2. 
   A ☐ B ☐ C ☐

3. 
   A ☐ B ☐ C ☐

4. 
   A ☐ B ☐ C ☐

5. 
   A ☐ B ☐ C ☐

Aa 13.7 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



The sight of the old, spooky house made my hair stand on end.

1 

I almost died of shame when my girlfriend found me singing in front of the mirror.

2 

It makes my blood boil when people litter.

3 

That horror movie sent shivers down my spine. It was so scary!

4 

Alice was shaking in her boots before she did her first bungee jump.

Aa 13.8 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

made me terrified = made my hair stand on end

1 a grumpy and disagreeable person = _____

2 angry and ready for conflict = _____

3 upset enough to cry = _____

4 the feeling that something bad is going to happen = _____

5 wanted to escape an embarrassing situation = _____

6 was angry with myself = _____

14 Memory

14.1 IDIOMS AND EXPRESSIONS ABOUT MEMORY

The answer to the teacher's question was **on the tip of my tongue**.

almost but not quite remembered



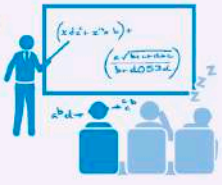
I can't believe I forgot to bring the sandwiches! I've got **a memory like a sieve**.

a poor practical memory



That boring lecture **went in one ear and out the other**!

was very easy to forget



Memories are fading of what the world was like before TV.

most people have forgotten



You should **keep in mind** that it gets cold in the winter and pack some warm clothes. (US)

remember something important that might be useful later



Jacob was explaining the diagram when he suddenly **lost his train of thought**.

forgot the main point of what he was talking about



When my son asked me to recommend a book, two titles **sprang to mind** immediately.

came quickly into someone's mind



Martha has **a photographic memory**. She copied that painting perfectly and she'd only seen it once.

the ability to remember information or images in great detail



It's the worst winter **in living memory**. I've never seen so much snow.

that anyone alive can remember



The police showed me a photo of the suspect to **jog my memory**.

help me to remember



When the hotel receptionist asked me for my phone number, **my mind went blank**.

I couldn't remember anything at all



I'm sorry I didn't get you a present. **It slipped my mind** that it was your birthday.

I forgot



That name **rings a bell**! I think I went to college with her.

is familiar



I've seen that animal before, but **its name escapes me**.

I can't remember its name



I've been **racking my brain** all morning but can't remember where I put my passport. (US)

thinking hard, or making an effort to remember



I enjoyed the party, but **at the back of my mind** I knew I had to catch the last train home.

although I tried not to think about it



When Betty found her old teddy bear, **memories** of her childhood **came flooding back**.

memories suddenly returned



Looking at my old medals **stirred up memories** of competing in the Olympics.

brought back memories



Emi and Sofia **took a trip down memory lane** as they talked about their school days.

talked about the past in a happy way



Keeping busy at work is helping me **erase the memory of** my ex-girlfriend.

avoid remembering or thinking about



Aa 14.2 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

tip | on | of | tongue | the | my

The answer to the teacher's question was *on* *the* *tip* *of* *my* *tongue* .

went | one | and | out | the | ear | other | in

1 That boring lecture _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ !

me | name | its | escapes

2 I've seen that animal before, but _____ _____ _____ _____ .

memory | trip | a | lane | took | down

3 Emi and Sofia _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ as they talked about their school days.

train | his | thought | lost | of

4 Jacob was explaining the diagram when he suddenly _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ .

Aa 14.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORD IN EACH SENTENCE



It's the worst winter in living ~~mind~~ / **memory**. I've never seen so much snow.



1 You should keep in **mind** / **memory** that it gets cold in the winter and pack some warm clothes.



2 The police showed me a photo of the suspect to jog my **mind** / **memory**.



3 I enjoyed the party, but at the back of my **mind** / **memory** I knew I had to catch the last train home.



4 Keeping busy at work is helping me erase the **mind** / **memory** of my ex-girlfriend.

14.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



Looking at my old medals *stirred up memories* of competing in the Olympics.

1 

When the hotel receptionist asked me for my phone number, _____.

2 

The answer to the teacher's question was _____.

3 

I'm sorry I didn't get you a present. _____ that it was your birthday.

4 

I can't believe I forgot to bring the sandwiches! I've got _____.

5 

_____ of what the world was like before TV.

14.5 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

I can't remember its name = *its name escapes me*

1 the ability to remember information or images in great detail = _____

2 memories suddenly returned = _____

3 thinking hard, or making an effort to remember = _____

4 is familiar = _____

5 avoid remembering or thinking about = _____

6 brought back memories = _____

7 that anyone alive can remember = _____

8 came quickly into someone's mind = _____

15 The body

15.1 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT THE BODY

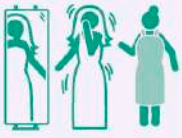
Harjit has his heart set on getting a pet.

wants to get or achieve something very much



Maureen was a bundle of nerves before her wedding.

extremely nervous



When you're a parent, you need to have eyes in the back of your head!

know everything that's going on around you



Scarlett got cold feet about going on the rollercoaster.

became too nervous to do something



As a rule of thumb, it takes about 10 minutes to cook pasta.

a general, approximate rule based on experience



Boris deserves a pat on the back for making this beautiful table.

a lot of appreciation



Keep your chin up! I'm sure the weather will get better soon.

Try to stay cheerful, even if circumstances are difficult.



Wyatt is a good friend. He was a shoulder to cry on when I broke up with my girlfriend.

a sympathetic and supportive person



I haven't booked a restaurant for lunch, so let's play it by ear and find somewhere that looks nice.

do something without planning ahead



You've been to Bali, haven't you? Can I pick your brain about the best places to visit?

ask for your opinion and advice



Paolo **almost jumped out of his skin** when a bat flew into his room.

was very shocked or frightened



I can't believe Iris is starting school today. She has grown up **in the blink of an eye**.

very quickly



Oh, no! I've forgotten my wallet. I'm such **a scatterbrain**!

a careless person who forgets things easily



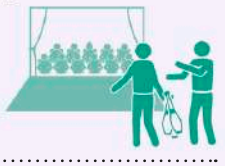
Isla has such **a sweet tooth**. She loves eating cakes.

a liking for sweet food



I hope the performance goes well, Adam. **Break a leg!**

Good luck! (said before performing on stage)



I wish Nathan would turn his music down. It's **getting on my nerves**.

annoying me



There's nothing to do at work at the moment. I'm just sitting here **twiddling my thumbs**.

doing nothing



My heart sank when I got to the museum and saw that it was closed.

I felt sad and disappointed



Our profits keep falling, but our boss is **burying his head in the sand** and not doing anything about it.

ignoring a problem and hoping it will go away



You have to be very **thick-skinned** when you work in this job. The customers often get angry.

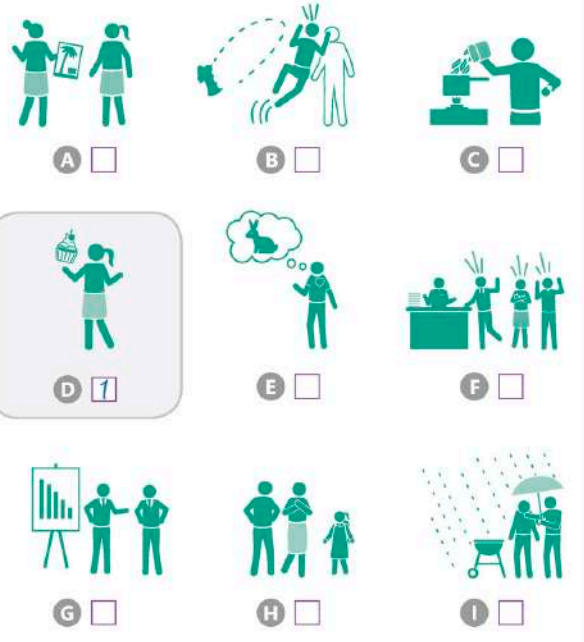
not easily upset by criticism



Aa 15.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE IDIOMS TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	a rule	of nerves
1	burying his head	my nerves
2	a bundle	of thumb
3	getting on	in the sand
4	Keep your	on the back
5	a shoulder	set on
6	a pat	chin up!
7	has his heart	to cry on

15.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM



Aa 15.4 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

Keep your chin up! I'm sure the weather will get better soon. ☑
Keep your head up! I'm sure the weather will get better soon. ☐

1 I hope the performance goes well, Adam. Break a leg! ☐
I hope the performance goes well, Adam. Break a bone! ☐

2 Oh, no! I've forgotten my wallet. I'm such a scatterhead! ☐
Oh, no! I've forgotten my wallet. I'm such a scatterbrain! ☐

3 Isla has such a sweet tongue. She loves eating cakes. ☐
Isla has such a sweet tooth. She loves eating cakes. ☐

4 Wyatt is a good friend. He was a shoulder to cry on when I broke up with my girlfriend. ☐
Wyatt is a good friend. He was an arm to cry on when I broke up with my girlfriend. ☐

Aa 15.5 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT IDIOMS

	ask for your opinion and advice	play it by ear
1	do something without planning ahead	my heart sank
2	I felt sad and disappointed	pick your brain
3	was very shocked or frightened	has his heart set on
4	wants to get or achieve something very much	thick-skinned
5	not easily upset by criticism	almost jumped out of his skin

Aa 15.6 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



Boris deserves *a pat on the back* for making this beautiful table.



3 Scarlett _____ about going on the rollercoaster.



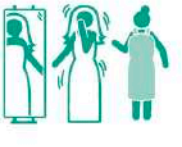
1 Oh, no! I've forgotten my wallet. I'm such _____ _____ !



4 There's nothing to do at work at the moment. I'm just sitting here _____ .



2 When you're a parent, you need to _____ _____ !



5 Maureen was _____ before her wedding.

16 War and weapons

16.1 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT WAR AND WEAPONS

I have an ax to grind with my roommate. She's always playing loud music at night.

a grievance or dispute to take up



I decided to hold fire before booking such an expensive holiday. (UK)

wait before taking action



What has been going on while we were away? It's like a war zone in here!

very messy and chaotic



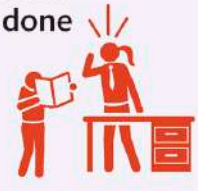
Buying a house can be a minefield. There's always so much to think about!

a complicated process with lots of potential problems



Balwant had to bite the bullet and tell his teacher that he hadn't done his homework.

do something nerve-wracking



Sonia stuck to her guns and told her daughter that she couldn't go to the party.

didn't change her mind when faced with conflict



Our daughter dropped a bombshell when she told us she and her new boyfriend were engaged.

delivered some shocking news



I always end up crossing swords with my grandfather when we talk about what's happening in the news.

arguing



Trying to make my children eat more vegetables has been an uphill battle.

a difficult struggle



My boss didn't give me a promotion, and then twisted the knife when she said my report was full of mistakes.

said or did something that made a bad situation feel worse



Poor you! You've really **been in the wars**! (UK)

suffered several injuries or misfortunes



They were so angry with each other that they almost **came to blows**!

had a fight or serious argument



The boss is in a terrible mood today! We're all going to be **in the line of fire**. (US)

likely to be criticized or punished (often unfairly)



I have some very bad news, but please **don't shoot the messenger**!

don't be angry with someone who reports bad news



Audrey looks really stressed. I think I **dodged a bullet** when she got that promotion and I didn't.

unintentionally avoided a situation that turned out to be bad



Jerry is **a loose cannon**. We should never have invited him to dinner with the clients.

someone who behaves unpredictably, often with bad consequences



My supervisor **stabbed me in the back** when she reported me to the store manager. I thought she was happy with my work.

betrayed me



I'm going to take my lunch break now. Could you **hold down the fort** until I get back? (US)

take care of something while someone is away



I lost my phone when I was shopping. It's **a long shot**, but I'm going to ask if anyone has handed it in at the store.

an attempt that has only a small chance of success



My girlfriend **caught me off guard** when she said two of her friends would be joining us for dinner tonight.

surprised me with something that I wasn't ready to deal with



Aa 16.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	I have an ax to grind with my roommate.	that they almost came to blows!
1	They were so angry with each other	We're all going to be in the line of fire.
2	I decided to hold fire before	She's always playing loud music at night.
3	The boss is in a terrible mood today!	booking such an expensive holiday.
4	Poor you!	but please don't shoot the messenger!
5	I have some very bad news,	You've really been in the wars!

16.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE CORRECT PICTURE FOR EACH SENTENCE YOU HEAR



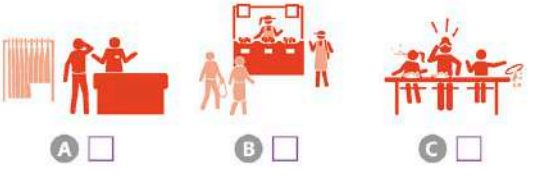
3



1



4



2



5



Aa 16.4 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



Trying to make my children eat more vegetables has been an uphill **battle** / ~~**fight**~~ / ~~**war**~~.

1 

Balwant had to bite the **gun** / **bullet** / **sword** and tell his teacher that he hadn't done his homework.

2 

Buying a house can be a **bombshell** / **battle** / **minefield**. There's always so much to think about!

3 

I'm going to take my lunch break now. Could you hold down the **fort** / **castle** / **moat** until I get back?

4 

Our daughter dropped a **minefield** / **bomb** / **bombshell** when she told us she and her new boyfriend were engaged.

5 

Sonia stuck to her **swords** / **guns** / **bombs** and told her daughter that she couldn't go to the party.

Aa 16.5 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

delivered some shocking news = d r o p p e d a b o m b s h e l l

1 betrayed me = s _ _ _ _ _ _ m _ i _ t _ _ b _ _ _

2 a difficult struggle = a _ u _ _ _ _ _ b _ _ _ _ _

3 arguing = c _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ s _ _ _ _ _

4 very messy and chaotic = l _ _ _ a w _ _ z _ _ _

5 a grievance or dispute to take up = a _ a _ t _ g _ _ _ _

17 Amount and distance

17.1 AMOUNT

What we've saved is just **a drop in the ocean** compared to what we need.

a tiny amount



Kaitlin's received **stacks of** letters from the bank, but hasn't opened them.

a large number of



We always take **everything but the kitchen sink** when we travel.

almost all our belongings



The Olympic swimming team has won **tons of** medals.

a large number of



I'll give you **a thousand-and-one** reasons why you shouldn't buy that house.

a huge number of



Rajesh has won every possible award for his movies, **give or take** one or two.

plus or minus; apart from



The guests began to arrive at the party **in dribs and drabs**.

slowly and in small numbers



Sam bought his brother's business, **lock, stock, and barrel**.

every part of something



Customers were **few and far between** because of the rain.

small in number; scarce



I'm so tired. I got **precious little** sleep last night.

almost no



17.2 DISTANCE

Carla's school is just **a stone's throw** away from the bus stop.

a short distance



The castle is in **a far-flung corner** of the island. It takes hours to drive there.

a distant, inaccessible part



The car avoided hitting my bike by just **a hair's breadth**.

a very short distance



The forest stretched **as far as the eye can see**.

into the distance



My new apartment is **within walking distance of** my workplace.

close enough to walk to from



You don't need to drive to the store. It's **just around the corner**.

a short distance away



People came from **far and wide** to watch the rock concert.

long distances away



I love to travel **off the beaten path** when I'm on vacation. (US)

to places that are less popular or difficult to reach



Jennifer won the marathon **by a whisker**.

by a very small amount or distance



Sharon lives in **the middle of nowhere**. You can't get there by train.

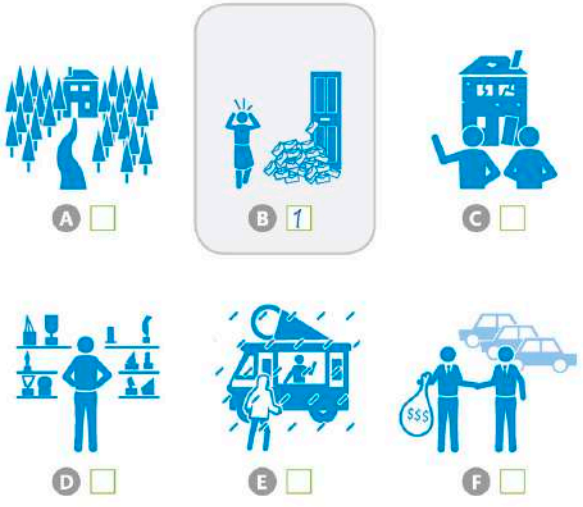
a place that is difficult to get to



Aa 17.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE IDIOMS TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	just around	the kitchen sink
1	a drop	of nowhere
2	the middle	the corner
3	everything but	beaten path
4	off the	in the ocean
5	in dribs	little
6	precious	and drabs

17.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM



Aa 17.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

The car avoided hitting my bike by just **a hair's width**.
The car avoided hitting my bike by just a hair's breadth.

1. The guests began to arrive at the party **in drips and drabs**.

2. My new apartment is **within running distance of** my workplace.

3. We always take **everything but the bathroom sink** when we travel.

4. The castle is in **a far-thrown corner** of the island. It takes hours to drive there.

5. Sharon lives in **the center of nowhere**. You can't get there by train.

Aa 17.6 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Carla's school is just a stone's throw away from the bus stop.

1 

What we've saved is just a drop in the ocean compared to what we need.

2 

You don't need to drive to the store. It's just around the corner.

3 

The forest stretched as far as the eye can see.

4 

The Olympic swimming team has won tons of medals.

Aa 17.7 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

slowly and in small numbers = *in dribs and drabs*

1. a place that is difficult to get to = _____
2. long distances away = _____
3. a huge number of = _____
4. small in number; scarce = _____
5. easy to walk to from = _____
6. by a very small amount or distance = _____
7. almost all our belongings = _____

18 Beginning and ending

18.1 BEGINNING

Mike's made a fresh start this year. He's eating much more healthily.

started to live life in a much better way



The sales team has hit the ground running since we launched our new smartphone.

done something with lots of enthusiasm right from the start



The New Year's celebrations kicked off with a band playing rock music.

began



Sophie's café finally got off the ground when she lowered her prices.

started to become successful



Tim's turned over a new leaf. He used to watch TV in the evenings, but now he goes jogging.

started to behave in a better way



The soccer team made a promising start to the season, beating last year's winners.

a beginning that shows lots of potential



The pottery course was far too difficult for a newbie like me.

someone starting an activity or a job for the first time



Mia's fashion firm got off to a flying start. She has already won three awards.

began extremely well



Let's get the ball rolling! Here's a brush and some paint for you.

start doing something with enthusiasm



I need to get going on the dinner. The guests are arriving in an hour!

start doing something immediately



18.2 ENDING

After selling the last sandwich, Dean decided to call it a day.

stop working



My cake's going to be great. I'm just putting the finishing touches on it. (US)

adding the final details to it



As the day drew to a close, we collected our things and left the beach.

came closer to its end



Trains across the city ground to a halt because of the snow.

slowed down and stopped



18.3 EXPRESSIONS WITH "END"

Jen is campaigning to put an end to the sale of plastic bottles.

make something end or stop happening



It was the end of an era when our boss retired after 30 years.

an important event that marks the end of a period of time



My vacation in Bali was so relaxing, but all good things must come to an end.

nothing lasts forever



A tasty pizza after a day of sightseeing provided the perfect end to a perfect day.

the ideal way to finish a good day



I've been marking tests all day, but the end is in sight!

it will be over soon



Winning the best actor award was a fitting end to Goro's career.

an appropriate way to end something



Aa 18.4 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



Let's get the ball **rolling** / ~~**running**~~ / ~~**falling**~~! Here's a brush and some paint for you.

1 

My cake's going to be great. I'm just putting the **ending** / **closing** / **finishing** touches on it.

2 

The pottery course was far too difficult for a **startie** / **newbie** / **newie** like me.

3 

Mike's made a **fresh** / **clean** / **cool** start this year. He's eating much more healthily.

4 

I've been marking tests all day, but the end is in **view** / **reach** / **sight**!

18.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK WHETHER THE SPEAKER IS TALKING ABOUT A BEGINNING OR AN ENDING



beginning ☐ ending ☑

1 

beginning ☐ ending ☐

2 

beginning ☐ ending ☐

3 

beginning ☐ ending ☐

4 

beginning ☐ ending ☐

5 

beginning ☐ ending ☐

Aa 18.6 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

perfect | the | day | a | perfect | end | to

A tasty pizza after a day of sightseeing provided *the perfect end to a perfect day.*

off | flying | a | to | start | got

1. Mia's fashion firm _____ . She has already won three awards.

end | the | era | an | of

2. It was _____ when our boss retired after 30 years.

day | it | call | a

3. After selling the last sandwich, Dean decided to _____ .

off | ground | the | got

4. Sophie's café finally _____ when she lowered her prices.

halt | a | ground | to

5. Trains across the city _____ because of the snow.

Aa 18.7 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

slowed down and stopped = g r o u n d t o a h a l t

1. an appropriate way to end something = a f _ _ _ _ _ _ e _ _
2. stop working = c _ _ _ _ i _ _ a d _ _ _
3. began = k _ _ _ _ _ _ o _ _
4. start doing something immediately = g _ _ _ g _ _ _ _
5. came closer to its end = d _ _ _ _ t _ _ a c _ _ _ _ _

19 Chance, luck, and probability

19.1 EXPRESSIONS WITH "CHANCE"

I think you'll need to replace your washing machine, but I'll take a look on the off-chance that I can fix it.

in the unlikely event



There was only a slim chance that we'd see a cheetah, so we were amazed when we spotted one.

a small possibility



The weather forecaster announced that we're in for a chance of rain tomorrow.

fairly likely to experience



We don't stand a chance of getting into the museum before lunchtime.

have no chance



19.2 EXPRESSIONS WITH "LUCK"

Winning the lottery was a stroke of luck for us.

something good that happens by chance



It was just a case of beginner's luck when I won that card game. I'd never played it before.

good luck for someone who has begun a new activity



I've already bought you ice cream. Don't push your luck!

Don't ask for anything else.



You're in luck! We have one dress left in your size.

lucky or able to do something



I'm afraid you're out of luck. The last train has just left the station.

unlucky or unable to do something



I hadn't studied for my tests, so it was sheer luck when I passed them.

very good luck that has nothing to do with planning or effort



19.3 PROBABILITY

Buster is the hot favourite to win the dog show. (UK)

the most likely to win



It looks like a medal is in the cards for Noriko after that amazing throw. (US)

a strong possibility



The result of the experiment is a foregone conclusion.

almost certain



Isabella says she will pass her English test, but don't hold your breath!

it is unlikely



Kerry will only clean up her room when pigs fly! (US)

never; it is very unlikely



I think Ruben's dreams of becoming a pop star are totally pie in the sky.

unrealistic or unlikely to happen



It's anyone's guess which player will win the game. They're both superb.

impossible to predict



I had an interview for a great job, but blew it when I arrived half an hour late.

made something good much less likely to happen



Against all odds, Ryder completed his round-the-world sailing trip today.

despite circumstances that made it unlikely



Russell has injured his knee. It's touch-and-go whether he'll be able to play in the tournament this month.

very uncertain



Aa 19.4 READ THE STATEMENTS AND MARK THE CORRECT MEANING

I've already bought you ice cream. Don't push your luck!

- **You're lucky.** ☐
- **You're unlucky.** ☐
- **Don't ask for anything else.** ☑

1. The weather forecaster announced that we're in for a chance of rain tomorrow.
   - **Rain is very likely.** ☐
   - **Rain is fairly likely.** ☐
   - **Rain is very unlikely.** ☐

2. Buster is the hot favourite to win the dog show.
   - **Buster is likely to win.** ☐
   - **Buster is unlikely to win.** ☐
   - **Buster is too hot.** ☐

3. Kerry will only clean up her room when pigs fly!
   - **It is very likely.** ☐
   - **It might happen.** ☐
   - **It is very unlikely.** ☐

4. Isabella says she will pass her English test, but don't hold your breath!
   - **She will definitely pass.** ☐
   - **She is unlikely to pass.** ☐
   - **She has already failed.** ☐

5. The result of the experiment is a foregone conclusion.
   - **We already know it.** ☐
   - **We can't predict it.** ☐
   - **It is almost certain.** ☐

Aa 19.5 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



It looks like a medal is in the cards for Noriko after that amazing throw.

1. 

The weather forecaster announced that we're in for a chance of rain tomorrow.

2. 

We don't stand a chance of getting into the museum before lunchtime.

3. 

I think Ruben's dreams of becoming a pop star are totally pie in the sky.

4. 

You're in luck! We have one dress left in your size.

5. 

I'm afraid you're out of luck. The last train has just left the station.

19.6 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



It's *anyone's guess* which player will win the game. They're both superb.



1 It was just a case of _____ when I won that card game. I'd never played it before.



2 There was only _____ that we'd see a cheetah, so we were amazed when we spotted one.



3 Russell has injured his knee. It's _____ _____ whether he'll be able to play in the tournament this month.



4 I hadn't studied for my tests, so it was _____ _____ when I passed them.



5 I had an interview for a great job, but _____ _____ when I arrived half an hour late.

Aa 19.7 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

made something good much less likely to happen = *blew it*

1 in the unlikely event = _____

2 despite circumstances that made it unlikely = _____

3 something good that happens by chance = _____

4 Don't ask for anything else. = _____

5 the most likely to win = _____

20 Ease and difficulty

20.1 EASE

The test was **a cinch**. I finished it 20 minutes early.

extremely easy



Getting around my city is **a breeze**. Our trains are excellent.

easy



Winning that race was **like shooting fish in a barrel**. Nobody else had trained.

very easy (usually about overcoming competition)



It's **all too easy** to forget to turn off the lights when you go out.

very easy (usually about a mistake)



Making a great cup of coffee is **not rocket science**.

not very complicated or difficult



Finding Angela's house was **easy peasy**. I have a GPS.

easy



I already play the violin, so learning the cello was **a walk in the park**.

easy



Unclogging my sink was **a piece of cake** for Carlita. She's a plumber.

extremely easy and straightforward



Alicia's worked in this factory so long she could do her job **with her eyes shut**.

easily, or without thinking



Driving on the left was difficult at first, but soon it was **smooth sailing**. (US)

easy, without major problems



20.2 DIFFICULTIES AND PROBLEMS

Doing the dishes after a dinner party is a pain in the neck.

very annoying or problematic



My home improvements opened a can of worms. The builders discovered so many problems.

caused a situation that leads to more difficulties



Don't make a mountain out of a molehill. I only asked you to help me bake a cake!

make a small task or problem seem bigger than it is



The team has a mountain to climb if it wants to win the game.

a huge amount to do, or problem to overcome



Giving up chocolate is easier said than done.

not as easy as it seems



Finishing the building this month is going to be a tall order.

very difficult



I was like a fish out of water at the science fiction convention.

in a difficult or unusual situation



There have been teething problems with the new computer system at work. (UK)

problems at the beginning of a process



Bashir was totally out of his depth on his first day working at the florist.

in a situation that is too difficult



I tried to make the politician answer my question, but it was like getting blood from a stone. (UK)

extremely difficult, usually because of someone's behavior



20.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

A  The test was a cinch. I finished it 20 minutes early. ☐

B  It's all too easy to forget to turn off the lights when you go out. ☐

C  Alicia's worked in this factory so long she could do her job with her eyes shut. ☐

D  Making a great cup of coffee is not rocket science. 1

E  Finding Angela's house was easy peasy. I have a GPS. ☐

Aa 20.4 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

I already play the violin, so learning the cello was a walk in the street. ☐
I already play the violin, so learning the cello was a walk in the park. ☑

1. There have been teething problems with the new computer system at work. ☐
   There have been toothing problems with the new computer system at work. ☐

2. Unclogging my sink was a slice of cake for Carlita. She's a plumber. ☐
   Unclogging my sink was a piece of cake for Carlita. She's a plumber. ☐

3. Doing the dishes after a dinner party is a pain in the head. ☐
   Doing the dishes after a dinner party is a pain in the neck. ☐

4. Getting around my city is a wind. Our trains are excellent. ☐
   Getting around my city is a breeze. Our trains are excellent. ☐

5. Finishing the building this month is going to be a tall order. ☐
   Finishing the building this month is going to be a high order. ☐

Aa 20.5 WRITE THE IDIOMS FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS

EASE	DIFFICULTY
smooth sailing	

easier said than done ~~smooth sailing~~ like shooting fish in a barrel out of his depth
a breeze a tall order with her eyes shut like getting blood from a stone

Aa 20.6 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



Bashir was totally *out of his depth* on his first day working at the florist.



3 The team has _____ _____ if it wants to win the game.



1 Don't _____ .
I only asked you to help me bake a cake!



4 I was _____
at the science fiction convention.



2 My home improvements _____ .
The builders discovered so many problems.



5 Doing the dishes after a dinner party is _____ _____ .

21 Safety and danger

21.1 SAFETY

It might rain later. I'll play it safe and take an umbrella.

avoid any unnecessary risks



The rescue team found the climbers safe and sound after a week-long search.

unharmed and safe



Make sure you wear a helmet when you're cycling! Remember, safety first!

safety is the most important thing



Zahira is an excellent scuba teacher. You're in safe hands with her.

in the care of someone responsible



21.2 RISK AND DANGER

The route through the jungle was fraught with danger.

full of danger



That bike almost hit me! It was too close for comfort.

dangerously close



Elsa's job at the café is hanging by a thread after she dropped another tray of drinks.

in a very dangerous or insecure situation



You're skating on thin ice, Dai. You've arrived late for school every day this week.

potentially getting into trouble



If you don't do your violin practice, you run the risk of failing your test next week.

put yourself at risk



Blake is teetering on the brink of losing his job. His boss has given him a final warning.

close to a dangerous situation



The bear had left, and the coast was clear. We could continue with our trek.

it was safe to do something



After the crash, I called my mom to tell her I was still in one piece.

unharmed or uninjured



Are you sure you want to buy that motorcycle? I think you should look before you leap.

think about the consequences of taking risks



I always wear goggles when I do an experiment. Better safe than sorry!

Be careful so that you avoid problems later.



You have to take your life in your hands every time you cross this road.

take a great risk



I advised Kathy not to go into the water. It would be risking life and limb.

extremely dangerous



Hayley had a close shave. That ball almost hit her!

a situation where something bad nearly happened



Marco had a narrow escape, but managed to avoid being hit by the truck.

nearly had an accident, or got into danger



Jill's operation went well, but she's not out of the woods yet.

not out of danger



Maddy caught the train by the skin of her teeth. It left a few seconds later.

by the smallest possible amount of time



Aa 21.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

After the crash, I called my mom to tell her I was still **in one bit**.
After the crash, I called my mom to tell her I was still in one piece.



1. Zahira is an excellent scuba teacher. You're **in safe arms** with her.



2. Hayley had **a near shave**. That ball almost hit her!



3. I advised Kathy not to go into the water. It would be **risking life and leg**.



4. The bear had left, and **the ocean was clear**. We could continue with our trek.



21.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK WHETHER THE SPEAKER IS TALKING ABOUT SAFETY OR DANGER



safety ☐
danger ☑



1. safety ☐
danger ☐



2. safety ☐
danger ☐



3. safety ☐
danger ☐



4. safety ☐
danger ☐



5. safety ☐
danger ☐



6. safety ☐
danger ☐



7. safety ☐
danger ☐



8. safety ☐
danger ☐



9. safety ☐
danger ☐

Aa 21.5 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



The rescue team found the climbers safe and sound after a week-long search.

1 

Elsa's job at the café is hanging by a thread after she dropped another tray of drinks.

2 

You have to take your life in your hands every time you cross this road.

3 

Maddy caught the train by the skin of her teeth. It left a few seconds later.

4 

The route through the jungle was fraught with danger.

5 

Make sure you wear a helmet when you're cycling! Remember, safety first!

Aa 21.6 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

think about the consequences of taking risks = look before you leap

1 unharmed or uninjured = _____

2 nearly had an accident, or got into danger = _____

3 safety is the most important thing = _____

4 in the care of someone responsible = _____

5 dangerously close = _____

22 Difficult situations

22.1 PROBLEMS AND DIFFICULTIES

Oh, no, I've missed the last bus home. I'm really **in a jam** now.

in a difficult situation



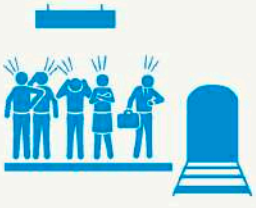
Logan's restaurant is **in dire straits**. There are never any customers.

in a very bad situation



Getting to work today was **a nightmare**. All the trains were canceled.

very difficult or unpleasant



The police officer **came up against a brick wall** when he asked if there were any witnesses to the crime.

couldn't make any progress



Not being able to read music was **a stumbling block** when I started learning the saxophone.

something that causes problems and stops progress



I'm **in a bit of a tight spot** because my boss has just asked me to work late tonight and it's my wedding anniversary.

in a difficult or awkward situation



I hated working at the diner. **The final straw** was when they made me dress as a chicken.

the last in a series of events that makes a bad situation impossible to tolerate



The peeling wallpaper was just **the tip of the iceberg**. The house needed so many repairs.

a small, visible part of a larger problem



Rosa was **thrown in at the deep end** when she had to teach the worst class in the school on her first day at work.

put in a difficult situation with no time to prepare



Tina was in **a no-win situation**. Her son wanted a beach vacation, but her daughter wanted to go skiing.

a difficult situation with no possibility of a positive outcome



Lisa has had **a bumpy ride** recently. First she broke her arm, and now she has failed her tests.

a difficult time



When Ava told me how much fun she'd had at the party, it **rubbed salt into the wound**. I wasn't invited.

made a bad situation feel worse



I have been offered a more interesting job, but the pay is terrible. I'm **caught between a rock and a hard place**.

facing a choice between two bad options



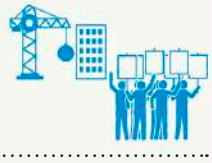
If you let your children eat whatever they want for dinner, you're **making a rod for your own back**. (UK)

causing yourself more difficulties in the future



The protesters want to stop the building being demolished, but they're **fighting a losing battle**.

trying to achieve something that is very unlikely



22.2 DEALING WITH PROBLEMS

I hate going to the dentist, but I know I have to **grin and bear it**.

accept a bad situation without complaining



Getting the old gramophone record player to work was **a tough nut to crack**.

a difficult problem to solve



The plumber **got to the bottom of** what's causing the leak. We need to replace the pipe.

found out what is causing a problem or situation



I can't believe you've upset your sister again! I'm the one who has to **pick up the pieces**.

try to make a situation better after something bad has happened



Working on the farm meant I had to **come to grips with** driving a tractor. (US)

learn how to do something challenging



Aa 22.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE IDIOMS TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	came up against	losing battle
1	a tough nut	bear it
2	fighting a	a brick wall
3	rubbed salt	to crack
4	grin and	the pieces
5	thrown in at	into the wound
6	pick up	the deep end

22.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE IDIOMS YOU HEAR

- A in dire straits ☐
- B a stumbling block ☑
- C the final straw ☐
- D caught between a rock and a hard place ☐
- E making a rod for your own back ☐
- F a bumpy ride ☐
- G a no-win situation ☐
- H grin and bear it ☐
- I in a bit of a tight spot ☐

Aa 22.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



I hate going to the dentist, but I know I have to ~~smile~~ / **grin** / ~~laugh~~ and bear it.

1 

Oh, no, I've missed the last bus home. I'm really in a **jam** / **trap** / **hole** now.

2 

Working on the farm meant I had to come to **hands** / **holds** / **grips** with driving a tractor.

3 

The peeling wallpaper was just the **tip** / **top** / **end** of the iceberg. The house needed so many repairs.

4 

I hated working at the diner. The final **line** / **straw** / **rope** was when they made me dress as a chicken.

5 

The plumber got to the **base** / **depth** / **bottom** of what's causing the leak. We need to replace the pipe.

Aa 22.6 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE IDIOMS IN THE PANEL



Logan's restaurant is *in dire straits*. There are never any customers.

1 

Not being able to read music was _____ when I started learning the saxophone.

2 

The protesters want to stop the building being demolished, but they're _____ _____.

3 

If you let your children eat whatever they want for dinner, you're _____.

4 

I hate going to the dentist, but I know I have to _____.

5 

I can't believe you've upset your sister again! I'm the one who has to _____ _____.

fighting a losing battle	~~in dire straits~~	pick up the pieces
a stumbling block	making a rod for your own back	grin and bear it

Aa 22.7 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

learn how to do something challenging = c o m e t o g r i p s w i t h

1 very difficult or unpleasant = a n _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _

2 a difficult time = a b _ _ _ _ r _ _ _

3 in a very bad situation = i _ d _ _ _ s _ _ _ _ _ _ _

4 a difficult problem to solve = a t _ _ _ _ n _ _ t _ c _ _ _ _

5 in a difficult situation = i _ a j _ _

23 The weather and nature

23.1 DESCRIBING THE WEATHER

Nina always takes her dog for a walk **come rain or shine**.

whatever the weather



Are you sure you want to go for a walk? There's **a howling wind** out there! (US)

a very strong wind



It's **raining cats and dogs**. I wish I hadn't forgotten my umbrella.

raining heavily



You don't need a coat, Phil! It's **like an oven** outside.

extremely hot



We had to leave the beach because it started **bucketing down**. (UK)

raining heavily



What **a scorcher**! It's perfect weather for a barbecue.

a very hot and sunny day



23.3 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT NATURE

There are lots of cafés and restaurants in **my neck of the woods**.

my local area



After months of boring lessons, our new teacher was **a breath of fresh air**.

an exciting change for the better



Don't be such **a stick-in-the-mud**! If you try skydiving, you might enjoy it.

someone who is unwilling to try new things



This politician used to be really popular, but now **the tide has turned**.

circumstances or people's opinions are the opposite of what they used to be



23.2 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT THE WEATHER

I love looking after my niece. She's **a ray of sunshine**.

a cheerful person who makes you feel happy



I had five minutes' peace before my students arrived. It was **the calm before the storm**.

the quiet period before a time of trouble or excitement



Isaac and Fatima's argument about which movie to watch was just **a storm in a teacup**.

an argument or controversy about something unimportant



Sorry, but we'll have to **take a rain check on** meeting up tonight. I'm not feeling very well.

postpone or cancel



You weren't listening to me, were you? You **had your head in the clouds**.

were thinking about something else



Megan **stole my thunder** when she told the professor the result of my experiment.

stole my idea, or diverted attention away from me



I wish my boss would stop **beating around the bush** and tell me what he really thinks of my product idea.

avoiding a subject by talking about irrelevant things



Kieran is so involved in every detail of this project that he **can't see the forest for the trees**. (US)

is looking too closely at the small details to see a whole situation clearly



I'm so tired tonight! I'm going to **hit the hay**. (US)

go to bed



The decision to close the library **made waves** in my local area.

caused controversy



Aa 23.4 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



1 

2 

3 

We had to leave the beach because it started bucketing down.

It's raining cats and dogs. I wish I hadn't forgotten my umbrella.

Nina always takes her dog for a walk come rain or shine.

What a scorcher! It's perfect weather for a barbecue.

Aa 23.5 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

I love looking after my niece. She's a ray of sunshine. ☑
I love looking after my niece. She's a beam of sunshine. ☐

1 You weren't listening to me, were you? You had your head in the air. ☐
You weren't listening to me, were you? You had your head in the clouds. ☐

2 This politician used to be really popular, but now the tide has turned. ☐
This politician used to be really popular, but now the ocean has turned. ☐

3 Isaac and Fatima's argument about which movie to watch was just a cloud in a teacup. ☐
Isaac and Fatima's argument about which movie to watch was just a storm in a teacup. ☐

4 You don't need a coat, Phil! It's like a fire outside. ☐
You don't need a coat, Phil! It's like an oven outside. ☐

5 I'm so tired tonight! I'm going to hit the hay. ☐
I'm so tired tonight! I'm going to hit the grass. ☐

6 There are lots of cafés and restaurants in my neck of the woods. ☐
There are lots of cafés and restaurants in my neck of the trees. ☐

Aa 23.6 WRITE THE IDIOMS FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

go to bed
hit the hay

1. someone who is unwilling to try new things
2. a cheerful person who makes you feel happy
3. postpone or cancel
4. an exciting change for the better
5. a very strong wind
6. extremely hot
7. raining heavily

a ray of sunshine	raining cats and dogs	a breath of fresh air	like an oven
~~hit the hay~~	a howling wind	take a rain check on	a stick-in-the-mud

23.7 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM


A ☐


B ☐


C ☐


D 1


E ☐


F ☐


G ☐


H ☐

24 Talking

24.1 EXPRESSIONS WITH "TALK"

Ahmed talks the talk, but isn't very hardworking.

talks in a convincing way



I've tried telling Maya to clean up her room, but it's like talking to a brick wall.

pointless because the other person won't respond



Ryan wants to join the circus. I'm trying to talk some sense into him.

persuade him to behave in a sensible way



Kirsty's always commenting on other people's clothes. She can talk!

She's just as bad herself!



My colleagues love to talk shop when they meet for lunch.

talk about their jobs



Linda likes to talk big. She claims she's visited every country.

boast or exaggerate



Leo can talk himself out of any awkward situation.

escape from any difficult situation using lies or humor



Tamara is really friendly, but she can talk your ear off.

talk at great length



I hate it when my boss talks down to me!

patronizes me



I made small talk with Marisha while we waited for the train.

polite conversation about unimportant or uncontroversial things



24.2 CONVERSATION AND TALKING

I always enjoy **a chitchat** with my sister over coffee. (US)

a chat or gossip



This politician has a reputation for **speaking his mind**.

saying exactly what he thinks about something



My grandpa **spins a good yarn**. He loves telling us about his childhood adventures.

tells funny or unlikely stories



The students **parroted** the facts without using their own words.

repeated word for word



Akio **struck up a conversation** with one of his fellow passengers.

began a conversation



I sat on the shore with my boyfriend, **shooting the breeze**. (US)

talking in a relaxed way



Nina keeps **droning on** about her new car. It's getting really boring!

talking at length in an uninteresting way



Sarah was born with **the gift of the gab**. She could sell you anything.

the ability to speak confidently and persuasively



My cousin is such **a loudmouth**. He never stops talking!

someone who talks too much



Cat got your tongue? You usually have so much to say.

You're being very quiet.



Aa 24.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	Akio struck up a conversation	without using their own words.
1	I always enjoy a chitchat	talks down to me!
2	The students parroted the facts	with one of his fellow passengers.
3	Ahmed talks the talk,	with my sister over coffee.
4	I hate it when my boss	but isn't very hardworking.
5	Leo can talk himself out	for speaking his mind.
6	My colleagues love to talk shop	but it's like talking to a brick wall.
7	This politician has a reputation	of any awkward situation.
8	I made small talk with Marisha	when they meet for lunch.
9	I've tried telling Maya to clean up her room,	while we waited for the train.

Aa 24.4 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

a chat or gossip = a c h i t c h a t

1 talk about their jobs = t _ _ _ s _ _ _ _

2 tells funny or unlikely stories = s _ _ _ _ a g _ _ _ y _ _ _ _

3 She's just as bad herself! = S _ _ c _ _ t _ _ _ _ !

4 boast or exaggerate = t _ _ _ b _ _

5 repeated word for word = p _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _

6 patronizes me = t _ _ _ _ d _ _ _ t _ m _

7 talks in a convincing way = t _ _ _ _ t _ _ t _ _ _

24.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE IDIOMS YOU HEAR

struck up a conversation ☐	speaking his mind ☐	shooting the breeze ☑
1 talk some sense into him ☐	talks down to me ☐	She can talk! ☐
2 speaking his mind ☐	spins a good yarn ☐	talk your ear off ☐
3 the gift of the gab ☐	droning on ☐	a loudmouth ☐
4 talks down to me ☐	talks the talk ☐	small talk ☐

Aa 24.6 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE IDIOMS IN THE PANEL



Ryan wants to join the circus. I'm trying to *talk some sense into him* .



3 Sarah was born with _____ . She could sell you anything.



1 Nina keeps _____ about her new car. It's getting really boring!



4 _____ You usually have so much to say.



2 This politician has a reputation for _____ _____ .



5 I sat on the shore with my boyfriend, _____ _____ .

speaking his mind | Cat got your tongue? | ~~talk some sense into him~~ | shooting the breeze | droning on | the gift of the gab

25 Sharing information

25.1 SHARING NEWS

Good luck with your interview today. **Keep me posted** about how it goes!

keep me informed with the latest news



Rumors that the two actors had secretly gotten married **spread like wildfire**.

spread very quickly



Anna's manager **touched base** with her for a quick update on her research.

had a brief conversation to get an update



Angie **filled me in** on what happened at work while I was away.

told me all the latest important information



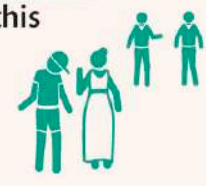
This restaurant couldn't afford an advertising campaign, but it has become really popular **by word of mouth**.

by people talking about it



We must have **got our wires crossed**. I thought the dress code for this party was casual.

misunderstood information, or become confused



25.2 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT ANIMALS

Pedro's going to marry Elena. I **heard it from the horse's mouth**.

heard the news directly from the original source



A little bird told me that Richa is going to be promoted.

someone (whose name I won't reveal) told me



I'm planning a surprise trip to Paris with Liam to celebrate our wedding anniversary. Don't **let the cat out of the bag**!

reveal a secret by mistake



The boss **stirred up a hornet's nest** when she said we would have to take a pay cut. (US)

caused a lot of upset or excitement



I'm afraid your cat will have to stay here overnight, but I promise I'll keep you in the picture about how she's recovering.

keep you fully informed



Lin decided to get it off her chest and told Mel all about her relationship problems.

share something worrying or upsetting



The tour rep broke the news to us that our flight had been canceled.

revealed important (and usually bad) news



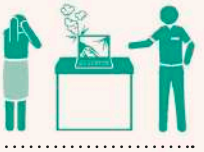
The design team make sure they always keep me in the loop.

keep me updated about shared information



I'm sorry to be the bearer of bad news, but we won't be able to fix your computer.

someone who delivers bad news



Phil showed me around the kitchen. He knows the nuts and bolts of running a restaurant.

the practical rules of something



25.3 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT FOOD

When news stories are shocking, I always take them with a grain of salt. (US)

don't completely believe them



I heard it through the grapevine that Luisa is pregnant.

heard some news through gossip or rumor



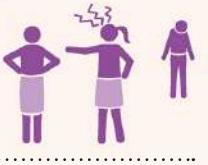
After leaving the band, Marco dished the dirt about the other band members to a journalist.

shared malicious gossip



Why did you spill the beans and tell Luke I had a new boyfriend? I wanted to tell him myself.

reveal a secret



25.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- A Good luck with your interview today. Keep me posted about how it goes! ☐
- B The tour rep broke the news to us that our flight had been canceled. ☐
- C Phil showed me around the kitchen. He knows the nuts and bolts of running a restaurant. 1
- D Pedro's going to marry Elena. I heard it from the horse's mouth. ☐
- E A little bird told me that Richa is going to be promoted. ☐
- F Angie filled me in on what happened at work while I was away. ☐
- G The design team make sure they always keep me in the loop. ☐
- H Lin decided to get it off her chest and told Mel all about her relationship problems. ☐

Aa 25.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

I'm sorry to be **the giver of bad news**, but we won't be able to fix your computer.
I'm sorry to be the bearer of bad news, but we won't be able to fix your computer.



1. We must have **got our lines crossed**. I thought the dress code for this party was casual.



2. When news stories are shocking, I always **take them with a grain of sugar**.



3. The boss **stirred up a bee's nest** when she said we would have to take a pay cut.



4. After leaving the band, Marco **served the dirt** about the other band members to a journalist.



5. Anna's manager **touched ground** with her for a quick update on her research.



6. The tour rep **smashed the news** to us that our flight had been canceled.

Aa 25.6 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



This restaurant couldn't afford an advertising campaign, but it has become really popular by word of mouth.

1 

Lin decided to get it off her chest and told Mel all about her relationship problems.

2 

I'm afraid your cat will have to stay here overnight, but I promise I'll keep you in the picture about how she's recovering.

3 

Why did you spill the beans and tell Luke I had a new boyfriend? I wanted to tell him myself.

4 

Rumors that the two actors had secretly gotten married spread like wildfire.

5 

I'm planning a surprise trip to Paris with Liam to celebrate our wedding anniversary. Don't let the cat out of the bag!

Aa 25.7 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

keep me updated about shared information = *keep me in the loop*

1. someone who delivers bad news = _____
2. don't completely believe them = _____
3. misunderstood information, or become confused = _____
4. heard some news through gossip or rumor = _____
5. had a brief conversation to get an update = _____

26 Truth and lies

26.1 TELLING THE TRUTH

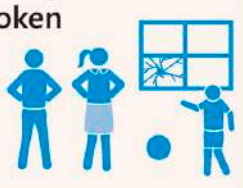
I'm scared of dogs. In fact, I'm terrified of them, **to tell you the truth**.

to be completely honest



Nathan **came clean** with his parents and told them he had broken the window.

confessed to doing something wrong



My teacher was **brutally honest** with me and told me my essay was terrible.

honest in a very direct or insensitive way



The voting process in this election is completely **above board**. All the votes are counted and checked.

honest, open, or legal



A whistleblower has told the authorities about the dirty conditions in the kitchen at work.

someone who tells a person in authority about something illegal or wrong



26.2 KEEPING SECRETS

Tania told me a secret but asked me to **keep it under my hat**.

avoid telling anyone



Anita's recipe for her banana cake is **top secret**. She won't share it with anyone.

completely secret



I promise I won't tell Lizzie you're going to propose to her. **My lips are sealed.**

I will keep it a secret.



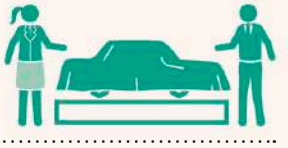
I'm not going to tell you how much my house cost. It's **none of your business**!

private information



We're keeping our new car model **under wraps** until the launch later this week.

secret



26.3 TELLING LIES

I thought Bella's hat was ridiculous, but I told her a white lie and said I loved it.

a lie to avoid hurting someone's feelings



I think Warren was bending the truth when I interviewed him for this job. He said he had excellent IT skills.

lying, misleading people, or exaggerating



My wife was angry when I went behind her back and bought myself a new motorcycle.

did something without telling her



David lied through his teeth to his mom. He claimed the cat had broken her favorite vase.

told a blatant lie



The salesman really took us for a ride when he sold us this car. It's always breaking down!

deceived or cheated us



Our boss says the company is doing well, but she has a reputation for telling half-truths.

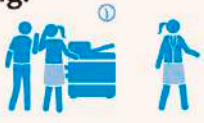
not telling the whole truth



26.4 SUSPICION

I have a sneaking suspicion that Marcia was at a job interview this morning.

suspect something without firm evidence



I knew Frida hadn't been out sick. I smelled a rat when she came back to work with a suntan.

suspected that someone had lied



The children are being very quiet. I think there's something fishy going on!

something suspicious



The piano teacher had a hunch that Jordan hadn't done any practice since his last lesson.

suspected



Aa 26.5 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



Anita's recipe for her banana cake is high secret. She won't share it with anyone. ☐
Anita's recipe for her banana cake is top secret. She won't share it with anyone. ☑

1 

The children are being very quiet. I think there's something fishy going on! ☐
The children are being very quiet. I think there's something tricky going on! ☐

2 

Tania told me a secret but asked me to keep it under my coat. ☐
Tania told me a secret but asked me to keep it under my hat. ☐

3 

My wife was angry when I went behind her head and bought myself a new motorcycle. ☐
My wife was angry when I went behind her back and bought myself a new motorcycle. ☐

4 

I promise I won't tell Lizzie you're going to propose to her. My lips are sealed. ☐
I promise I won't tell Lizzie you're going to propose to her. My lips are closed. ☐

5 

I thought Bella's hat was ridiculous, but I told her a white lie and said I loved it. ☐
I thought Bella's hat was ridiculous, but I told her a pink lie and said I loved it. ☐

Aa 26.6 WRITE THE IDIOMS FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS

TRUTH	LIES
a whistleblower	

bending the truth ~~a whistleblower~~ telling half-truths came clean
above board went behind her back took us for a ride brutally honest

26.7 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE IDIOMS YOU HEAR

- A lied through his teeth ✓
- B my lips are sealed
- C to tell you the truth
- D had a hunch
- E under wraps
- F bending the truth
- G have a sneaking suspicion

26.8 READ THE LETTER AND CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS

Hi Sunita,
I have some exciting news for you, but please keep it under / ~~below~~ your hat because it's most / top secret at the moment. I've been promoted! I had a hint / hunch that I would get the job because my interview went well. As I said, please don't tell anyone because my new boss still wants to keep it under wraps / cover.
Love, Lindsay

26.9 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE IDIOMS IN THE PANEL



We're keeping our new car model *under* *wraps* until the launch later this week.



1 I'm not going to tell you how much my house cost. It's _____ !



2 _____ has told the authorities about the dirty conditions in the kitchen at work.



3 I knew Frida hadn't been out sick. I _____ _____ when she came back to work with a suntan.



4 David _____ to his mom. He claimed the cat had broken her favorite vase.



5 My teacher was _____ with me and told me my essay was terrible.

smelled a rat | none of your business | brutally honest
A whistleblower | ~~under wraps~~ | lied through his teeth

27 Looking and listening

27.1 LOOKING AND WATCHING

The examiner watched us like a hawk, making sure we didn't cheat.

watched us very carefully



Felipe cast a glance at his watch. The bus was already 10 minutes late.

looked quickly



Kezia looked furious when I told her I'd torn her dress. If looks could kill!

Someone looked very angry.



Bastian kept a close watch on his children as they played outside.

watched carefully



The teacher turned a blind eye to his students' bad behavior.

ignored, or pretended not to see



We kept our eyes peeled, hoping we'd spot some rare birds.

watched very carefully for something



I asked my brother to keep an eye on the dinner while I was talking on the phone.

take care of something, or watch something carefully



The border guard gave my documents the once-over, then let me drive on.

a quick check or inspection



I always cast an eye over my desk to make sure I haven't forgotten anything when I leave the office.

look at or check something quickly



Karen has an eagle eye. She found lots of mistakes when I asked her to check my essay.

the ability to spot small details



27.2 LISTENING AND HEARING

Jenny, please tell me how the interview went. **I'm all ears!**

I'm eager to hear about it!



I told my daughter she should work harder, but my advice **fell on deaf ears**.

was ignored



My grandfather is **hard of hearing**, so I often have to repeat things to him.

partially deaf



Omar **lent a sympathetic ear** when I broke up with my boyfriend.

listened to someone's problems with sympathy



Martina didn't hear the teacher's question. She was **a million miles away**.

not listening at all



Be careful what you say about the boss. Remember, **walls have ears**!

you never know who's listening when you're talking in a public place



I completely **zoned out** during that meeting. It was so boring!

stopped listening or concentrating



It was **music to my ears** when my son told me he'd passed his driving test.

wonderful news



Ethan was only **listening with half an ear** and kept checking his phone as I spoke to him.

not listening attentively



When my parents **got wind of** the fact that I'd had a house party, they were furious.

found out about something that was meant to be a secret



Aa 27.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

I told my daughter she should work harder, but my advice fell on ~~closed~~ / ~~blocked~~ / deaf ears.

1. Felipe cast / threw / looked a glance at his watch. The bus was already 10 minutes late.
2. Jenny, please tell me how the interview went. I'm all eyes / ears / listening!
3. Bastian kept / held / gave a close watch on his children as they played outside.
4. The examiner watched us like a bear / hawk / lion, making sure we didn't cheat.
5. Kezia looked furious when I told her I'd torn her dress. If looks / eyes / ears could kill!
6. When my parents got air / ear / wind of the fact that I'd had a house party, they were furious.
7. Omar lent a kind / sympathetic / nice ear when I broke up with my boyfriend.

27.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM



Aa 27.5 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE IDIOMS TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	a million	half an ear
1	If looks	hearing
2	hard of	miles away
3	listening with	could kill!
4	fell on	sympathetic ear
5	cast an	like a hawk
6	watched us	blind eye
7	lent a	eye over
8	turned a	deaf ears

Aa 27.6 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



I asked my brother to put an eye on the dinner while I was talking on the phone. ☐
I asked my brother to keep an eye on the dinner while I was talking on the phone. ☑

1 

Be careful what you say about the boss. Remember, walls have ears! ☐
Be careful what you say about the boss. Remember, doors have ears! ☐

2 

We kept our eyes peeled, hoping we'd spot some rare birds. ☐
We kept our eyes alert, hoping we'd spot some rare birds. ☐

3 

Martina didn't hear the teacher's question. She was a thousand miles away. ☐
Martina didn't hear the teacher's question. She was a million miles away. ☐

4 

The border guard gave my documents the twice-over, then let me drive on. ☐
The border guard gave my documents the once-over, then let me drive on. ☐

5 

The teacher turned a blind eye to his students' bad behavior. ☐
The teacher turned a closed eye to his students' bad behavior. ☐

Aa 27.7 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

watched very carefully for something = k e p t o u r e y e s p e e l e d

1 wonderful news = m _ _ _ _ t _ m _ e _ _ _

2 the ability to spot small details = a _ e _ _ _ _ e _ _

3 look at or check something quickly = c _ _ _ a _ e _ _ o _ _ _

4 was ignored = f _ _ _ o _ d _ _ _ e _ _ _

5 partially deaf = h _ _ _ o _ h _ _ _ _ _ _

28 Music and the arts

28.1 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT MUSIC AND THE ARTS

How many times must I drum it into your head? Wipe your feet on the mat!

tell you something again and again



Our new bookstore opens today. Let's get the show on the road!

get something started or working properly



You've changed your tune! I thought you didn't like cats.

changed your opinion



Dennis broke his mom's laptop. He had to face the music and tell her.

accept the consequences of actions



Pavel decided to jazz up his house, so he painted it purple.

make something brighter, more colorful, or more exciting



Juanita is so careful at work. She does everything by the book.

follows the rules, or does things in the expected way



Isaac's speech at the wedding hit the right note. It was really funny, but no one was offended.

was appropriate, or the right thing to say



Making sure people know about our concert will help us drum up an audience.

get by making an effort



Ramona loves to toot her own horn. She's always showing us her trophies. (US)

talk too much about her achievements



When Fay told me about her engagement, it was music to my ears!

wonderful news



Dad's always telling me to clean my room. He **is like a broken record**.

says the same thing again and again



Ian's desserts are amazing. He'll be **a tough act to follow** when he leaves.

difficult to follow with as much success



The police chief **put us in the picture** about the bank robbery. (UK)

explained the facts about a situation



I knew it was Enzo who had eaten my lunch. I can **read him like a book**.

understand what he's thinking from his body language



I'm going to **take a page out of your book** and clean my desk. (US)

copy your good habit



Antonio is great at flower arranging. He **has it down to an art**.

is an expert in something, usually after much practice



Nisha is helping me **fine-tune** my presentation for tomorrow morning.

change something slightly to make it even better



Kira's boss **made a scene** when she arrived five minutes late.

made an unnecessary fuss



Arjun felt **left out of the picture** when his roommates got a dog without telling him.

not informed about some news or a situation



Despite the rain, we decided not to cancel the play in the park. **The show must go on!**

Something must still happen despite any difficulties.



28.2 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE IDIOMS YOU HEAR

music to my ears	☑	face the music	☐	made a scene	☐
1 drum up	☐	hit the right note	☐	face the music	☐
2 changed your tune	☐	music to my ears	☐	fine-tune	☐
3 a tough act to follow	☐	jazz up	☐	hit the right note	☐
4 toot her own horn	☐	left out of the picture	☐	The show must go on!	☐
5 changed your tune	☐	fine-tune	☐	music to my ears	☐
6 get the show on the road	☐	has it down to an art	☐	is like a broken record	☐
7 face the music	☐	read him like a book	☐	changed your tune	☐

28.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Pavel decided to **rock up** his house, so he painted it purple.

Pavel decided to jazz up his house, so he painted it purple.



1 Antonio is great at flower arranging. He **has it down to a picture**.



2 Juanita is so careful at work. She **does everything by the story**.



3 I'm going to **take a chapter out of your book** and clean my desk.



4 The police chief **put us in the drawing** about the bank robbery.



5 How many times must I **shake it into your head**? Wipe your feet on the mat!



Aa 28.4 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT IDIOMS

	was appropriate, or the right thing to say	music to my ears
1	talk too much about her achievements	made a scene
2	wonderful news	hit the right note
3	get by making an effort	toot her own horn
4	made an unnecessary fuss	face the music
5	says the same thing again and again	drum up
6	accept the consequences of actions	is like a broken record

Aa 28.5 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



Ramona loves to *toot her own horn*.
She's always showing us her trophies.



3 You've _____ !
I thought you didn't like cats.



1 Ian's desserts are amazing. He'll be _____
_____ when he leaves.



4 Nisha is helping me _____
my presentation for tomorrow morning.



2 Arjun felt _____
when his roommates got a dog without telling him.



5 Dennis broke his mom's laptop. He had to
_____ and tell her.

29 Eating and drinking

29.1 EATING

Yuka's complaining that her sons have eaten her out of house and home.

eaten all the food in her house



You can buy yourself a square meal at the student café for a few dollars.

a satisfying and nutritious meal



Mario celebrated his 70th birthday with a feast fit for a king.

a delicious meal with lots of courses



Aliyah whipped up an omelet for Caleb and his friends.

prepared a meal quickly



The sight of the cake in the café window made my mouth water.

made me hungry, or want to eat something



Ethan took his new client out for a sit-down meal. (US)

a large and tasty meal, usually in a restaurant



Paolo was so hungry that he wolfed down that huge burger really quickly.

ate quickly and greedily



Krish always starts his day with a hearty breakfast.

a large breakfast



29.2 DRINKING

I washed down my pizza with a glass of lemonade.

followed a meal with a drink



Chris bought a round of drinks for the basketball team.

drinks you buy for the group of people you are with



Blue cheese is an acquired taste. I still think it's disgusting, but Joe loves it.

something that you only like after trying it a few times



I was in a rush, so I grabbed something to eat from the fast food stand.

bought something to eat in a hurry



Wayne eats like a bird. He only ever orders a small salad for lunch.

eats a very small amount



I'm so glad I ordered an extra-large pizza. I could eat a horse!

I feel extremely hungry.



Nigel took a tray of piping hot cupcakes out of the oven.

very hot



We complained to the waiter that our soup was stone cold.

completely cold



We sat in front of the TV stuffing our faces with popcorn.

eating lots of food in a greedy way



You shouldn't eat so many cookies! You'll spoil your appetite.

lose your desire to eat later



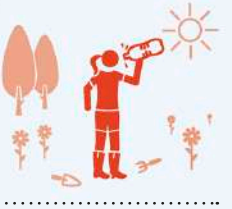
After three hours in the gym, Dan quenched his thirst with a glass of juice.

satisfied his thirst



I felt parched after working in the sun, so I drank a whole bottle of water.

extremely thirsty



Aa 29.3 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



We sat in front of the TV stuffing our faces with popcorn.

1 

Krish always starts his day with a hearty breakfast.

2 

Ethan took his new client out for a sit-down meal.

3 

You shouldn't eat so many cookies! You'll spoil your appetite.

4 

Nigel took a tray of piping hot cupcakes out of the oven.

5 

I washed down my pizza with a glass of lemonade.

6 

Aliyah whipped up an omelet for Caleb and his friends.

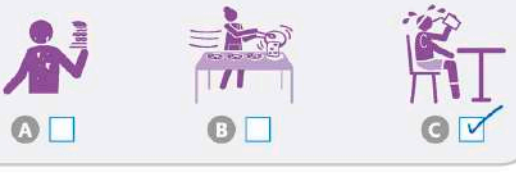
7 

We complained to the waiter that our soup was stone cold.

8 

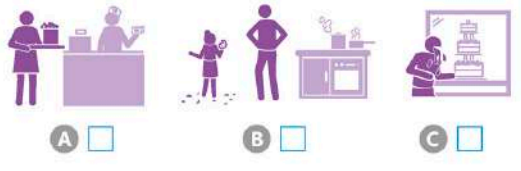
Mario celebrated his 70th birthday with a feast fit for a king.

29.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE CORRECT PICTURE FOR EACH SENTENCE YOU HEAR

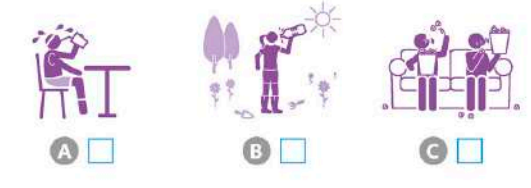


1 

2 

3 

4 

5 

Aa 29.5 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

her | house | of | home | and | eaten | out

Yuka's complaining that her sons have *eaten her out of house and home*.

fit | king | a | for | feast | a

1. Mario celebrated his 70th birthday with _____.

to | something | grabbed | eat

2. I was in a rush, so I _____ from the fast food stand.

mouth | my | water | made

3. The sight of the cake in the café window _____.

drinks | of | round | a

4. Chris bought _____ for the basketball team.

could | a | horse! | I | eat

5. I'm so glad I ordered an extra-large pizza. _____

Aa 29.6 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

bought something to eat in a hurry = *grabbed something to eat*

1. a satisfying and nutritious meal = _____
2. eats a very small amount = _____
3. ate quickly and greedily = _____
4. prepared a meal quickly = _____
5. lose your desire to eat later = _____

30 Describing your health

30.1 SICKNESS AND RECOVERY

Leo was feeling **the worse for wear** after he stayed out all night.

tired or in a bad state



My hay fever tends to **flare up** every summer.

suddenly get worse



Ayano was feeling **under the weather**, so she left work early.

not well, slightly sick or ill



This music's far too loud! It has given me **a splitting headache**.

a terrible headache



I don't feel very well. I think I'm **coming down with something**.

starting to get sick



Pablo is **on the road to recovery** after breaking his leg.

getting better



30.2 HEALTH AND FITNESS

Ollie received **a clean bill of health** from his doctor.

the news that you are completely healthy



The dancers in this show have to be **as fit as a fiddle**.

very fit and healthy



After turning 40, Tom decided to **get in shape** and started jogging.

become fitter and healthier, usually by losing weight



Moving to the country has given Kira **a new lease on life**. (US)

new energy and enthusiasm for life



I'm not well enough to go to work today, so I'm going to call in sick.

call my employer to say I am too sick to work



Yuka fell and cut her leg really badly when she was hiking, but she's on the mend now.

getting better



Jeanne has a heavy cold, so she's staying at home today.

a bad cold



Valentina has an upset stomach and can't stop throwing up.

vomiting



I'm in bad shape. I was exhausted after running to catch the bus.

in poor physical condition



Uma is up and about following her operation last week.

able to walk around



A week at a health spa was just what the doctor ordered after a stressful month at work.

exactly what was needed



A relaxing afternoon in the park helped me recharge my batteries.

regain my energy by resting



After a few days by the coast, Lauren began to feel as right as rain.

fit and healthy



Imran looks the picture of health since he started going to the gym.

extremely healthy



Aa 30.3 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

road | on | the | recovery | to

Pablo is *on* *the* *road* *to* *recovery* after breaking his leg.

down | something | coming | with

1 I don't feel very well. I think I'm _____.

lease | life | on | new | a

2 Moving to the country has given Kira _____.

of | a | clean | health | bill

3 Ollie received _____ from his doctor.

fiddle | fit | as | a | as

4 The dancers in this show have to be _____.

30.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK WHETHER THE SPEAKER IS TALKING ABOUT SICKNESS OR HEALTH



sickness ☐
health ☑



1 sickness ☐
health ☐



2 sickness ☐
health ☐



3 sickness ☐
health ☐



4 sickness ☐
health ☐



5 sickness ☐
health ☐



6 sickness ☐
health ☐



7 sickness ☐
health ☐



8 sickness ☐
health ☐



9 sickness ☐
health ☐

Aa 30.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

After a few days by the coast, Lauren began to feel **as good as rain**.
After a few days by the coast, Lauren began to feel as right as rain.



1. This music's far too loud! It has given me **a hitting headache**.



2. A week at a health spa was **just what the nurse ordered** after a stressful month at work.



3. Uma is **up and around** following her operation last week.



4. Imran looks **the drawing of health** since he started going to the gym.



5. A relaxing afternoon in the park helped me **load my batteries**.



Aa 30.6 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

not well, slightly sick or ill = u n d e r t h e w e a t h e r

1. tired or in a bad state = t _ _ w _ _ _ _ f _ _ w _ _ _
2. vomiting = t _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ u _
3. getting better = o _ t _ _ m _ _ _
4. in poor physical condition = i _ b _ _ s _ _ _ _
5. suddenly get worse = f _ _ _ _ _ u _
6. a bad cold = a h _ _ _ _ c _ _ _
7. become fitter and healthier = g _ _ i _ s _ _ _ _

31 Knowledge and education

31.1 KNOWLEDGE, THINKING, AND LEARNING

Mary's an expert in ancient history. She really knows her stuff.

knows a lot about a subject



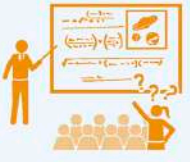
Peter's brushing up on his French before his vacation in Paris.

revising or improving knowledge about something



The professor's astrophysics lecture went over my head.

was impossible to understand



Andrea only started work here last week. She's still learning the ropes.

learning the basic skills for a job



I can show you around my city. I know it like the back of my hand.

know it extremely well



Vineetha loves modern art. She knows it inside out.

knows it extremely well



We both thought of buying Dan a camera for his birthday. Great minds think alike!

Intelligent people have the same ideas (said in a humorous way).



My client wanted a completely new design. I had to put on my thinking cap.

think seriously or creatively about a problem



I just can't make heads or tails of this map. (US)

can't understand at all



Sumiko gave her speech without notes. She had learned it by heart.

memorized it



31.2 SCHOOL, COLLEGE, AND TESTS

Brad thought he would pass the test easily, but he only scraped by.

passed a test with difficulty



Ian is such a bookworm. He loves reading.

someone who enjoys reading books



When Souad took her piano test, she passed with flying colors.

passed easily, or performed very well



Ben accused Stefan of being a copycat. Their artworks were very similar.

someone who copies another person's idea



Trent is a teacher's pet. He always offers to carry the teacher's bag.

someone who seeks approval from a person in authority



31.3 SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

Dion's new laptop is light-years ahead of his old one.

much more advanced than



Roman has bought himself a state-of-the-art TV set.

very modern and up-to-date



These doctors have made a breakthrough in their medical research.

an important discovery or achievement



Our cutting-edge products have made our company millions of dollars.

extremely modern and innovative



Ping's design for the new library really breaks the mold.

changes the usual way things are done



Aa 31.4 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE STATEMENTS TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	Sumiko gave her speech without notes.	went over my head.
1	Brad thought he would pass the test easily,	have made our company millions of dollars.
2	Our cutting-edge products	She had learned it by heart.
3	The professor's astrophysics lecture	She knows it inside out.
4	Ian is such a bookworm.	but he only scraped by.
5	Vineetha loves modern art.	a breakthrough in their medical research.
6	Ping's design for the new library	He loves reading.
7	These doctors have made	really breaks the mold.

31.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



Peter's *brushing up on* his French before his vacation in Paris.



1 We both thought of buying Dan a camera for his birthday. _____



2 Dion's new laptop is _____ _____ his old one.



3 Ben accused Stefan of being _____. Their artworks were very similar.



4 Mary's an expert in ancient history. She really _____.



5 The professor's astrophysics lecture _____ _____.

Aa 31.6 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



Trent is a teacher's ~~friend~~ / pet / ~~help~~. He always offers to carry the teacher's bag.

1 

Andrea only started work here last week. She's still learning the ropes / strings / lines.

2 

I can show you around my city. I know it like the back / palm / front of my hand.

3 

My client wanted a completely new design. I had to put on my thinking hat / cap / head.

4 

I just can't make heads or feet / bodies / tails of this map.

5 

Peter's brushing / sweeping / cleaning up on his French before his vacation in Paris.

Aa 31.7 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

was impossible to understand = went over my head

1 passed a test with difficulty = _____

2 very modern and up-to-date = _____

3 someone who copies another person's idea = _____

4 someone who enjoys reading books = _____

5 can't understand at all = _____

6 an important discovery or achievement = _____

7 passed easily, or performed very well = _____

32 Money

32.1 IDIOMS ABOUT MONEY

Luisa had to pay a hefty sum to get a ticket for the game today.

a large amount of money



My uncle started his own business a few years ago, and now he's really well off.

comfortably rich



Marco had to tighten his belt, so he started bringing his own lunch to work.

spend less money



Sarah had to pay through the nose to get a taxi home after she missed the last train.

pay a lot of money



Luna wants to buy a house soon, so she's building up a nest-egg.

a large sum of money saved for a specific purpose



Donna struck it rich when she won the lottery.

suddenly became rich



Irena's new handbag was very pricey. It cost hundreds of dollars.

expensive



Aranza and Dominic decided to go Dutch at the end of the meal.

share the cost of a meal out equally



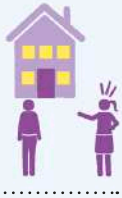
The shoes at the market cost next to nothing, so Jeremy bought three pairs.

were very cheap



If you don't turn off the lights when you leave the house, you're throwing money down the drain.

wasting money



I found it hard to make ends meet when I was a student, so I started working in a café.

pay for my basic needs



The popcorn in this movie theater is a rip-off! I prefer to bring my own snacks.

far more expensive than it should be



I loved looking after Nadia's cat while she was on vacation. It was easy money.

money earned for doing very little work



It was really generous of Imran to buy us dinner at that expensive restaurant, but he does like to throw money around.

show off by spending money



We ended up out of pocket when no one wanted to buy our ice cream.

with less money than we started with



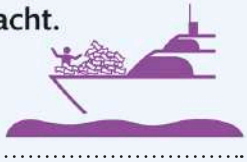
Getting the car fixed will be expensive, but luckily I have saved for a rainy day.

saved money for when it might be needed unexpectedly



Mike is rolling in it. He's just bought himself another yacht.

extremely rich



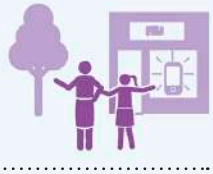
The stall is closing in an hour, so it's selling its sandwiches at rock-bottom prices.

very low prices



My daughter wants a new smartphone. I keep telling her money doesn't grow on trees!

there is only a limited amount of money



Vegetables don't have to be expensive. Carrots and cabbage are dirt cheap at this store.

extremely cheap



Aa 32.2 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



I loved looking after Nadia's cat while she was on vacation. It was easy money.

1 

If you don't turn off the lights when you leave the house, you're throwing money down the drain.

2 

My daughter wants a new smartphone. I keep telling her money doesn't grow on trees!

3 

It was really generous of Imran to buy us dinner at that expensive restaurant, but he does like to throw money around.

4 

Vegetables don't have to be expensive. Carrots and cabbage are dirt cheap at this store.

Aa 32.3 WRITE THE IDIOMS FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS

CHEAP	EXPENSIVE
dirt cheap	

pricey ~~dirt cheap~~ rock-bottom prices
a hefty sum cost next to nothing a rip-off

Aa 32.4 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE IDIOMS TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	money doesn't	a rainy day
1	tighten	rich
2	saved for	grow on trees
3	out of	his belt
4	struck it	in it
5	rolling	pocket

32.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- A If you don't turn off the lights when you leave the house, you're throwing money down the drain. ☐
- B Sarah had to pay through the nose to get a taxi home after she missed the last train. ☐
- C My uncle started his own business a few years ago, and now he's really well off. 1
- D The stall is closing in an hour, so it's selling its sandwiches at rock-bottom prices. ☐
- E My daughter wants a new smartphone. I keep telling her money doesn't grow on trees! ☐
- F Luisa had to pay a hefty sum to get a ticket for the game today. ☐

Aa 32.6 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



It was really generous of Imran to buy us dinner at that expensive restaurant, but he does like to *throw money around*.



3 Luna wants to buy a house soon, so she's building up _____.



1 I found it hard to _____ when I was a student, so I started working in a café.



4 Marco had to _____, so he started bringing his own lunch to work.



2 Aranza and Dominic decided to _____ at the end of the meal.



5 Getting the car fixed will be expensive, but luckily I have _____.

33 Shopping

33.1 IDIOMS AND EXPRESSIONS ABOUT SHOPPING

I like to **shop around** before I buy a new sofa.

compare prices at various stores



Be careful, Max! That vase **cost a fortune**.

cost a lot of money



Tourists usually **pay over the odds** when they buy souvenirs. (UK)

pay more than is typical



My new suit **cost an arm and a leg**. I bought it from a tailor in Milan.

cost a large amount of money



Adrian loves to **go bargain-hunting** at his local market.

search for goods that are cheaper than normal



Martina found a designer jacket for **a steal** at a thrift store.

a very low price or good bargain



Most customers prefer to buy **off-the-shelf** products because they are cheaper.

mass-produced, commercially available



During the sales, many stores **slash prices** by more than 50 percent.

reduce prices dramatically



A valuable painting **went under the hammer** and sold for £3 million last week. (UK)

was sold at an auction



Javier **drove a hard bargain**, refusing to drop the price of his house.

was a tough negotiator



The taxi from the airport cost more than $70. It was **highway robbery**! (US)

far more expensive than it should have been



For her 50th birthday, Davina decided to **splurge** on a new sports car.

spend money extravagantly



After winning the lottery, Tomás **went on a shopping spree**.

bought a large number of things



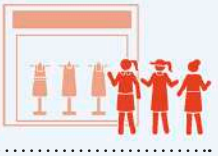
This store sells designer labels at **bargain-basement prices**.

very low prices



Ayesha **goes window shopping** with her friends every Saturday.

looks at goods in store windows without buying them



Hannah needed a new party dress and found **a good deal** online.

a good price



On the last day of the sales, Sam and Hiromi **shopped till they dropped**.

did a lot of shopping



Austin needed some **retail therapy**, so he spent the afternoon at the mall.

shopping as a way of getting rid of stress



It was so quiet on Monday that we decided to **close up shop** for the afternoon. (US)

close a business temporarily or permanently



We **were on a tight budget** for our vacation, so we stayed in a cheap hostel.

had a small amount of money to spend



Aa 33.2 WRITE THE IDIOMS FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS

CHEAP	EXPENSIVE
a good deal	

highway robbery ~~a good deal~~
bargain-basement prices cost an arm and a leg
pay over the odds slash prices

33.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM


A ☐


B ☐



C ☐


D ☐


E 1


F ☐


G ☐


H ☐


I ☐

Aa 33.4 READ THE STATEMENTS AND MARK THE CORRECT MEANING

Tourists usually pay over the odds when they buy souvenirs.
- They pay too much. ☑
- They pay the right amount. ☐
- They don't pay enough. ☐

1 Adrian loves to go bargain-hunting at his local market.
- He looks for expensive things. ☐
- He doesn't care what things cost. ☐
- He looks for cheap things. ☐

2 Martina found a designer jacket for a steal at a thrift store.
- She stole the jacket. ☐
- The jacket was cheap. ☐
- The jacket was expensive. ☐

3 During the sales, many stores slash prices by more than 50 percent.
- They increase prices. ☐
- They reduce prices a bit. ☐
- They reduce prices a lot. ☐

4 Ayesha goes window shopping with her friends every Saturday.
- Ayesha buys things. ☐
- Ayesha doesn't buy anything. ☐
- Ayesha buys windows. ☐

5 On the last day of the sales, Sam and Hiromi shopped till they dropped.
- They bought lots of things. ☐
- They didn't buy much. ☐
- They fell over. ☐

Aa 33.5 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



We were on a short budget for our vacation, so we stayed in a cheap hostel. ☐
We were on a tight budget for our vacation, so we stayed in a cheap hostel. ☑

1 

My new suit cost an arm and a leg. I bought it from a tailor in Milan. ☐
My new suit cost a hand and a foot. I bought it from a tailor in Milan. ☐

2 

After winning the lottery, Tomás went on a shopping ride. ☐
After winning the lottery, Tomás went on a shopping spree. ☐

3 

The taxi from the airport cost more than $70. It was highway robbery! ☐
The taxi from the airport cost more than $70. It was highway stealing! ☐

4 

Austin needed some retail therapy, so he spent the afternoon at the mall. ☐
Austin needed some shopping therapy, so he spent the afternoon at the mall. ☐

5 

This store sells designer labels at bargain-attic prices. ☐
This store sells designer labels at bargain-basement prices. ☐

6 

Javier ran a hard bargain, refusing to drop the price of his house. ☐
Javier drove a hard bargain, refusing to drop the price of his house. ☐

Aa 33.6 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

close a business temporarily or permanently = c l o s e u p s h o p

1 spend money extravagantly = s _ _ _ _ _ _

2 compare prices at various stores = s _ _ _ _ a _ _ _ _ _

3 pay more than is typical = p _ _ o _ _ _ t _ _ o _ _ _

4 reduce prices dramatically = s _ _ _ _ _ p _ _ _ _ _

5 cost a lot of money = c _ _ _ _ a f _ _ _ _ _ _

34 Time

34.1 IDIOMS AND EXPRESSIONS ABOUT TIME

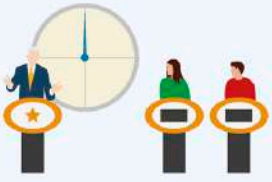
Júlio **took his time** finishing his painting. He wanted it to be perfect.

took the necessary time; didn't rush



Time's up! I need you to give me an answer now.

You have no more time to complete a task.



Victoria is always **on time** for her English class.

punctual



Huan only cooks at home **once in a blue moon**.

very rarely



You'll have to wait **until the cows come home** before Yuri fixes your car.

an extremely long time



That meeting really **dragged on**. Colm was almost asleep by the end.

lasted far too long



The teacher told Cory to stop **wasting time** on his phone.

spending time in an unproductive way



We must **get a move on** or we'll miss the start of the play.

hurry up



Driving to work during rush hour is such **a drag**. The traffic's terrible!

a boring experience that passes very slowly



It's been **ages** since I last went to the circus. I haven't been since I was a child.

a very long time



Today has flown by, and I still have so much work to do!

passed very quickly or too quickly



It's nearly midnight. It's about time we went home.

past the appropriate time



Finley's growing up so quickly! He was walking before we knew it.

unexpectedly soon or quickly



We arrived in the nick of time. The train was about to leave.

at the last possible moment



Our flight was delayed for a few hours, so we killed time playing cards.

kept busy while waiting



34.2 PARTS OF THE DAY

We were up at the crack of dawn to catch our flight.

extremely early in the morning



Ren arrived bright and early for his first day at work.

early in the morning



I was woken in the dead of night by a loud noise outside.

the middle of the night; the quietest part of the night



I worked on my assignment from dusk till dawn.

through the whole night



Fred stayed up until the wee hours, chatting with his grandfather.

very late at night



Aa 34.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE IDIOMS TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	in the nick	move on
1	get a	blue moon
2	from dusk	of time
3	once in a	till dawn
4	before we	of dawn
5	at the crack	knew it

34.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE IDIOMS YOU HEAR

- A a drag ☐
- B at the crack of dawn ☑
- C bright and early ☐
- D dragged on ☐
- E ages ☐
- F flown by ☐
- G killed time ☐
- H the dead of night ☐

Aa 34.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



You'll have to wait until the ~~sheep~~ / ~~pigs~~ / **cows** come home before Yuri fixes your car.

1 

Time's **out** / **up** / **off**! I need you to give me an answer now.

2 

The teacher told Cory to stop **wasting** / **losing** / **using** time on his phone.

3 

I was woken in the **death** / **die** / **dead** of night by a loud noise outside.

4 

We were up at the **split** / **crack** / **gap** of dawn to catch our flight.

5 

That meeting really **slowed** / **crawled** / **dragged** on. Colm was almost asleep by the end.

Aa 34.6 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT IDIOMS

kept busy while waiting

1. unexpectedly soon or quickly
2. very late at night
3. You have no more time to complete a task.
4. a boring experience that passes very slowly
5. at the last possible moment
6. passed very quickly or too quickly

killed time

Time's up!
before we knew it
a drag
the wee hours
flown by
in the nick of time

Aa 34.7 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



We must _get a move on_ or we'll miss the start of the play.



3 Ren arrived _____ for his first day at work.



1 Júlio _____ finishing his painting. He wanted it to be perfect.



4 It's nearly midnight. It's _____ we went home.



2 Victoria is always _____ for her English class.



5 Huan only cooks at home _____ _____ .

35 Clothes

35.1 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT CLOTHES

When Juan won the national art prize, it was a feather in his cap.

an achievement to be proud of



Pedro's upset about failing the test. You'll have to handle him with kid gloves.

treat him very carefully or sensitively



If Sven wins the race, I'll eat my hat!

I'll be amazed (but I doubt it will happen)



I take my hat off to Jo for collecting so much money for charity this year.

I am very impressed with



My daughter thinks my taste in music is really old hat.

old-fashioned



My boss got very hot under the collar when I handed my report in late.

agitated and angry



The movie was a spy thriller with lots of cloak-and-dagger action.

involving mystery, spying, or things that happen in secret



Our plan to improve sales didn't work, but I have a new plan up my sleeve.

ready, but not yet common knowledge



Jane has a bee in her bonnet about people dropping litter on the sidewalk.

gets very angry and annoyed



Ian's become too big for his boots since his promotion. He always ignores me. (UK)

arrogant or self-important



We need to roll up our sleeves if we're going to finish painting the house today.

get ready to work hard



Cathy had been lining her pockets with company funds for years before the boss caught her.

making money illegally, often by corruption



Austin is in a lot of trouble. I wouldn't want to be in his shoes.

in his situation



This steak really is as tough as shoe leather. I need a sharper knife! (US)

difficult to cut or chew



If Gavin doesn't start working harder, we'll have to give him the boot.

force him to leave his job



My teacher explained that I would fail the exam if I didn't pull my socks up. (UK)

start working harder



My cousin is very emotional. He'll start an argument at the drop of a hat.

immediately, or without thinking too much about it



Carter is such a clever clogs. He's always the first to raise his hand in class. (UK)

a person who likes to show how intelligent they are



I don't think he thought about what he was saying. It was just an off-the-cuff comment.

unprepared and spontaneous



After working at the bank for 30 years, it was time for me to hang up my boots.

retire



Aa 35.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	I take my hat off to Jo	we'll have to give him the boot.
1	We need to roll up our sleeves	when I handed my report in late.
2	If Gavin doesn't start working harder,	for collecting so much money for charity this year.
3	Austin is in a lot of trouble.	if we're going to finish painting the house today.
4	My boss got very hot under the collar	I wouldn't want to be in his shoes.
5	The movie was a spy thriller	about people dropping litter on the sidewalk.
6	If Sven wins the race,	in music is really old hat.
7	My daughter thinks my taste	I'll eat my hat!
8	Jane has a bee in her bonnet	with lots of cloak-and-dagger action.

Aa 35.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

I don't think he thought about what he was saying. It was just an **off-the-sleeve** comment.

I don't think he thought about what he was saying. It was just an off-the-cuff comment.



1 Pedro's upset about failing the test. You'll have to **handle him with kid socks**.



2 Ian's become **too big for his shoes** since his promotion. He always ignores me.



3 When Juan won the national art prize, it was **a feather in his hat**.



4 My teacher explained that I would fail the exam if I didn't **pull my shoes up**.



35.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



Jane *has a bee in her bonnet* about people dropping litter on the sidewalk.



1 This steak really is _____ _____. I need a sharper knife!



2 My cousin is very emotional. He'll start an argument _____ _____.



3 Carter is such _____ _____. He's always the first to raise his hand in class.



4 After working at the bank for 30 years, it was time for me to _____.



5 We need to _____ _____ if we're going to finish painting the house today.

35.5 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

start working harder = p u l l m y s o c k s u p

1 force him to leave his job = g_____ h___ t___ b_____

2 ready, but not yet common knowledge = u__ m__ s_____

3 in his situation = i__ h___ s_____

4 get ready to work hard = r_____ u__ o___ s_____

5 retire = h_____ u__ m__ b_____

6 unprepared and spontaneous = o___-t___-c_____

7 making money illegally = l_____ h___ p_____

8 old-fashioned = o___ h___

36 Working and relaxing

36.1 WORKING HARD

Nicole's **burning the candle at both ends**. She must be exhausted.

working very hard, from the early morning until late at night



I'm sorry, I can't talk to you for long. I **have my hands full**.

am very busy



Leo always **goes the extra mile** to keep our customers happy.

makes more of an effort than expected



It took a lot of **elbow grease** to get the old car looking good again.

hard work or cleaning



The police **left no stone unturned** in their efforts to solve the crime.

did everything possible to solve a problem



Samira was **snowed under** with complaints from unhappy customers.

extremely busy, or overwhelmed



Although Julie had never tried roller-skating before, she **gave it her best shot**.

tried her best



Adele's parents **pulled out all the stops** to make sure she had a wonderful 18th birthday.

did everything possible to succeed



Celia had to **put her head down** and finish her essay to meet the deadline. (US)

concentrate and work hard



We'll have to **roll up our sleeves** if we're going to finish the building this month.

be ready to work very hard



36.2 RELAXING

Akash usually takes 40 winks after he's finished his lunch.

has a short sleep



Kelly took a cat nap in the afternoon sun.

had a short sleep



After a long day working at the store, Marc likes to put his feet up and watch TV.

have a rest



We stopped to take a breather before loading the rest of the boxes into the van.

have a short break and a rest



We were up late at our housewarming party last night, so we're taking it easy today.

resting and relaxing



36.3 BEING LAZY

If you cut corners to save time, the quality of your work will suffer.

try to do things quickly and cheaply without thinking of quality



Carmen is not pulling her weight. I found her asleep at her desk again!

not working as hard as other members of the team



Erik was so lazy. He didn't lift a finger to help us clean up after the party.

did absolutely nothing



Brandon is a slacker. He looks at his phone all day and ignores the customers.

a very lazy person



I was such a lazybones when I was a student. I spent most of the time playing video games.

a lazy person



36.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE CORRECT PICTURE FOR EACH SENTENCE YOU HEAR


A ☐


B ☐


C ☑

1


A ☐


B ☐


C ☐

2


A ☐


B ☐


C ☐

3


A ☐


B ☐


C ☐

4


A ☐


B ☐


C ☐

5


A ☐


B ☐


C ☐

Aa 36.5 READ THE STATEMENTS AND MARK THE CORRECT MEANING

Kelly took a cat nap in the afternoon sun.

Kelly worked hard. ☐
Kelly had a short sleep. ☑
Kelly has a cat. ☐

1 Nicole's burning the candle at both ends. She must be exhausted.

She's working hard. ☐
She's lazy. ☐
She has burned herself. ☐

2 We stopped to take a breather before loading the rest of the boxes into the van.

We slept. ☐
We had a drink. ☐
We rested. ☐

3 Although Julie had never tried roller-skating before, she gave it her best shot.

Julie won the competition. ☐
Julie tried her best. ☐
Julie lost the competition. ☐

4 Carmen is not pulling her weight. I found her asleep at her desk again!

Carmen is sick. ☐
Carmen is on a diet. ☐
Carmen is not working hard. ☐

5 It took a lot of elbow grease to get the old car looking good again.

It was hard work. ☐
It needed a lot of polish. ☐
It was easy. ☐

Aa 36.6 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



We were up late at our housewarming party last night, so we're taking it simple today. ☐
We were up late at our housewarming party last night, so we're taking it easy today. ☑

1. 
   Leo always runs the extra mile to keep our customers happy. ☐
   Leo always goes the extra mile to keep our customers happy. ☐

2. 
   Akash usually takes 40 blinks after he's finished his lunch. ☐
   Akash usually takes 40 winks after he's finished his lunch. ☐

3. 
   I'm sorry, I can't talk to you for long. I have my hands full. ☐
   I'm sorry, I can't talk to you for long. I have my arms full. ☐

4. 
   Celia had to put her head down and finish her essay to meet the deadline. ☐
   Celia had to put her face down and finish her essay to meet the deadline. ☐

5. 
   Brandon is a relaxer. He looks at his phone all day and ignores the customers. ☐
   Brandon is a slacker. He looks at his phone all day and ignores the customers. ☐

6. 
   After a long day working at the store, Marc likes to put his legs up and watch TV. ☐
   After a long day working at the store, Marc likes to put his feet up and watch TV. ☐

Aa 36.7 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

makes more of an effort than expected = *goes the extra mile*

1. did everything possible to succeed = _____
2. be ready to work very hard = _____
3. extremely busy, or overwhelmed = _____
4. hard work or cleaning = _____
5. did absolutely nothing = _____

37 Movement and progress

37.1 IDIOMS ABOUT MOVEMENT AND PROGRESS

The traffic usually moves at a snail's pace during the rush hour.

extremely slowly



The hikers forged ahead in spite of the terrible snowstorm.

made good progress



The children threw the ball back and forth as they played outside.

in one direction, then back again



Astronauts made great strides in space exploration in the 1960s.

made a lot of progress



The guests made a beeline for all the cakes on the table.

moved quickly and in a straight line toward



Marion is going to up sticks and move to Bristol. (UK)

take her belongings and move somewhere else



I've been at my desk all day. I'm going to stretch my legs and make some coffee.

go for a short walk after sitting down for a long time



I want to buy a house this year, so I've set the wheels in motion and arranged some viewings.

done something to start a process



Our company has blazed a trail with these new environmentally friendly cars.

done something that has never been done before



I was late for my business meeting, so I had to eat lunch on the run. (US)

while walking or traveling



Maisie's restaurant is up and running. The first diners arrived at lunchtime.

open and working well



I'm running around like a headless chicken trying to get the meal ready for my guests tonight.

rushing around trying to do too many things at once



Scientists are on the verge of developing intelligent robots.

very close to doing something



Slowly but surely, my daughter is learning to ride a bike.

slowly, but at a steady rate of progress



Julia used to be so disorganized, but has really got her act together recently.

started to behave in a more organized and serious way



After squeezing our luggage into the car, we were ready to hit the road.

begin a trip or a drive



I've been going around in circles trying to write this report, but I haven't been given enough information.

not making any progress



After losing a few games earlier this month, the team is back on track now.

working well again after experiencing problems



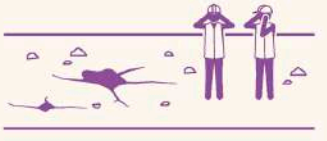
The client hates my design for the company logo, so it's back to the drawing board.

I have to start again or try another idea



We had just finished repairing the road and now it has been damaged in a storm. It's back to square one.

back to the beginning



Aa 37.2 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

her | together | act | got

Julia used to be so disorganized, but has really *got* *her* *act* *together* recently.

to | board | drawing | back | it's | the

1 The client hates my design for the company logo, so _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____.

pace | snail's | a | at

2 The traffic usually moves _____ _____ _____ _____ during the rush hour.

a | for | made | beeline

3 The guests _____ _____ _____ _____ all the cakes on the table.

verge | on | of | the

4 Scientists are _____ _____ _____ _____ developing intelligent robots.

37.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

A I've been at my desk all day. I'm going to stretch my legs and make some coffee. ☐

B Our company has blazed a trail with these new environmentally friendly cars. ☐

C I want to buy a house this year, so I've set the wheels in motion and arranged some viewings. 1

D After losing a few games earlier this month, the team is back on track now. ☐

E Marion is going to up sticks and move to Bristol. ☐

Aa 37.4 MATCH THE IDIOMS TO THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

	back and forth	begin a trip or a drive
1	hit the road	not making any progress
2	up and running	in one direction, then back again
3	back to square one	made a lot of progess
4	going around in circles	open and working well
5	made great strides	back to the beginning

Aa 37.5 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



I've been at my desk all day. I'm going to *stretch my legs* and make some coffee.



3 _____, my daughter is learning to ride a bike.



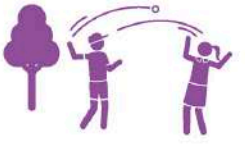
1 The hikers _____ in spite of the terrible snowstorm.



4 I was late for my business meeting, so I had to eat lunch _____.



2 I'm _____ trying to get the meal ready for my guests tonight.



5 The children threw the ball _____ _____ as they played outside.

38 Rules, law, and authority

38.1 IDIOMS AND EXPRESSIONS ABOUT RULES AND THE LAW

It's important to **obey the law** when you're cycling in the city.

follow the commands of the law



Ben **suffered the consequences** of his misbehavior and had to wash the car.

was punished for something



Gavin **broke the law** when he drove through a red light.

disobeyed the law



Since leaving jail, Crystal has **kept on the straight and narrow**.

stayed out of trouble



Danielle decided to **bend the rules** and let her kids stay up later than usual.

relax the rules a little



It was the first time Raul had been caught speeding, so the police **let him off the hook**.

chose not to punish him



38.2 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT THE BODY

We have a meeting with **the head** of our department every week.

the person with the most authority



Seth **took the law into his own hands** and confronted the vandals.

dealt with crime without using the legal system



Carla refused to **toe the line** and wear the same uniform as the other students.

follow or conform to the rules



Despite being rude to a customer, Ed only received **a slap on the wrist**, and got a verbal warning.

a minor punishment



It's the children who rule the roost in Kaylee's family. They don't respect her.

have control



It was the day of reckoning. The judge was about to sentence Mason for burglary.

day when someone finds out the consequences of their actions



The vandals got their just deserts and had to do community service.

received the punishment they deserved



The jury discussed the evidence and reached a verdict after two days.

decided whether someone was guilty or innocent



Paul has really crossed the line this time. He's eaten all his sister's birthday cake.

behaved in a very inappropriate way



Chrissie calls the shots in our restaurant. She decides what's on the menu.

has the authority or power



Pedro's father put his foot down and refused to let him watch TV.

made a firm decision



Leah's manager twisted her arm, and she agreed to work late.

put pressure on her



The party got out of hand, so the neighbors called the police.

became impossible to control



Jack's boss is always breathing down his neck. He wants more independence.

watching or supervising him too closely



38.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE IDIOMS YOU HEAR

let him off the hook	☑	rule the roost	☐	put his foot down	☐
1 crossed the line	☐	a slap on the wrist	☐	calls the shots	☐
2 got out of hand	☐	bend the rules	☐	broke the law	☐
3 toe the line	☐	obey the law	☐	twisted her arm	☐
4 reached a verdict	☐	broke the law	☐	suffered the consequences	☐
5 got their just deserts	☐	calls the shots	☐	crossed the line	☐

Aa 38.4 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



It's the children who rule the roost in Kaylee's family. They don't respect her.

1 

Paul has really crossed the line this time. He's eaten all his sister's birthday cake.

2 

It was the day of reckoning. The judge was about to sentence Mason for burglary.

3 

Seth took the law into his own hands and confronted the vandals.

4 

It's important to obey the law when you're cycling in the city.

5 

Ben suffered the consequences of his misbehavior and had to wash the car.

Aa 38.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Danielle decided to **twist the rules** and let her kids stay up later than usual.
Danielle decided to bend the rules and let her kids stay up later than usual.



1. Carla refused to **walk the line** and wear the same uniform as the other students.



2. Jack's boss is always **breathing down his ear**. He wants more independence.



3. The party **got out of reach**, so the neighbors called the police.



4. Since leaving jail, Crystal has **kept on the strict and narrow**.



5. Pedro's father **put his leg down** and refused to let him watch TV.



Aa 38.6 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

received the punishment they deserved = *got their just deserts*

1. chose not to punish him = _____
2. decided whether someone was guilty or innocent = _____
3. put pressure on her = _____
4. the person with the most authority = _____
5. has the authority or power = _____
6. a minor punishment = _____

39 Success and failure

39.1 SUCCESS

Melissa did really well in the race. She **won it hands down**.

won it easily and with little effort



Nathan's first book was **an overnight success**. It sold a million copies in a month.

successful very quickly



Jane really **nailed it** with her jokes. The audience loved her.

was successful, popular, or accurate



Miguel has **hit the jackpot** with his new ice cream machine.

become financially successful



Malik's band has **hit the big time**. It performed at the national stadium last night.

become very successful



Tyler has finally reached **the dizzy heights** of head chef. He started out doing the dishes.

a very important position



39.2 FAILURE

Tim's **beating a dead horse**. Nobody wants to buy his old car. (US)

wasting energy on something that will never succeed



Margaret's performance **fell flat on its face**. She can't sing!

was a complete failure



The barbecue was **an utter failure**. It rained and none of my friends turned up.

a complete failure



The decorators have really **screwed up** this job! We won't use them again.

made a mess of



The dancers **brought the house down** with their fantastic performance.

greatly impressed an audience



The outdoor exhibition has been **a runaway success**. Lots of people have come to see it.

extremely successful



Lucy's beauty salon is **going from strength to strength**. She's opening another soon.

becoming increasingly successful



The soccer tournament **ran like clockwork**. Everyone really enjoyed it.

happened as planned, without any problems



I knew Helena would **go places** as an athlete. She was so good at running at school.

become successful



Erica's presentation **worked like a charm** with the investors. They loved the designs.

was very impressive



My dinner party started to **go sideways** when I spilled soup everywhere. (US)

go wrong, or fail



Nicola's decision to take her dog shopping turned out to be **a recipe for disaster**.

a cause of major problems



Kevin's career is **on the ropes**. His boss has given him an official warning.

going badly, or failing



The gang's plan to rob the bank **went belly up** when a policeman recognized Mike.

failed completely



Aa 39.3 WRITE THE IDIOMS FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS

SUCCESS	FAILURE
hit the big time	

on the ropes ~~hit thebig time~~ worked like a charm

go sideways screwed up brought the house down

Aa 39.4 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



Tim's *beating a dead horse*. Nobody wants to buy his old car.



3 Nathan's first book was _____ _____. It sold a million copies in a month.



1 The gang's plan to rob the bank _____ _____ when a policeman recognized Mike.



4 Lucy's beauty salon is _____ _____. She's opening another soon.



2 Nicola's decision to take her dog shopping turned out to be _____.



5 Margaret's performance _____ _____. She can't sing!

39.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK WHETHER THE SPEAKER IS TALKING ABOUT SUCCESS OR FAILURE



success ☑
failure ☐



1 success ☐
failure ☐



2 success ☐
failure ☐



3 success ☐
failure ☐



4 success ☐
failure ☐



5 success ☐
failure ☐



6 success ☐
failure ☐



7 success ☐
failure ☐



8 success ☐
failure ☐



9 success ☐
failure ☐

39.6 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT IDIOMS

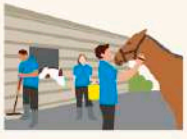
	was successful, popular, or accurate	go sideways
1	won it easily and with little effort	brought the house down
2	go wrong, or fail	nailed it
3	successful very quickly	fell flat on its face
4	greatly impressed an audience	won it hands down
5	was a complete failure	a recipe for disaster
6	becoming increasingly successful	an overnight success
7	a cause of major problems	hit the jackpot
8	become financially successful	screwed up
9	made a mess of	going from strength to strength

40 Work and business 1

40.1 WORK AND BUSINESS IDIOMS

Carlos has lots of hands-on experience working with horses.

knowledge and skill gained through doing something



Our snack bars are delicious, healthy, and affordable. In a nutshell, your customers will love them.

in a few words



Rory goes the extra mile to make sure his customers are satisfied.

does more than is expected



I'm afraid Glen's busy. He's up to his eyeballs grading papers.

extremely busy



Irena's internship at the fashion firm helped her to get a foot in the door.

an opportunity to start doing a new job



Despite the snow, it's business as usual at the store today.

the normal routine of a company or workplace



I was fired from my job at the salon after I dyed a customer's hair green by mistake.

forced to leave a job



Andrew made sure he had his ducks in a row before his presentation.

had everything prepared and organized



Sara has handed in her notice at work. She's going to study engineering.

formally told her employer that she will leave her job



We offer customers a discount when they recommend us to a friend. It's a win-win situation.

a situation with a positive outcome for everyone



40.2 EXPRESSIONS WITH "JOB"

Victor is climbing the career ladder. He started work as a receptionist last year and he's already a manager.

getting higher pay and more responsibility at work



After studying for many years, Anna embarked on a career as a surgeon.

started a new career



Maya is a great designer. She always thinks outside the box.

thinks about things in an original way



We're working around the clock to make sure the new subway line opens on time.

working all day and night



I'm afraid Katya can't come to the phone. She's tied up in meetings all morning.

busy doing something else



I'm really bored at work, so I've decided to start job hunting.

looking for a new job



Working at the kindergarten is tiring, but the job satisfaction is high.

the pleasure you get from work



Miguel has just landed a job at a photography firm in San Francisco.

found a good job



I'm surprised Cheryl has managed to hold down a job at the store for so long. She's always being rude to customers.

keep a job



I used to work night shifts, but now I have a nine-to-five job.

a job with regular daytime hours, from Monday to Friday



Aa 40.3 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

to | eyeballs | his | up

I'm afraid Glen's busy. He's *up* *to* *his* *eyeballs* grading papers.

ducks | a | had | row | his | in

1. Andrew made sure he _____ before his presentation.

box | the | outside | thinks

2. Maya is a great designer. She always _____.

in | foot | a | door | the

3. Irena's internship at the fashion firm helped her to get _____.

the | working | clock | around

4. We're _____ to make sure the new subway line opens on time.

40.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM



A ☐



B ☐



C ☐



D ☐



E 1



F ☐



G ☐



H ☐

Aa 40.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



Despite the snow, it's business as ~~normal~~ / usual / ~~ever~~ at the store today.

1. 
Carlos has lots of **hands-on** / **head-on** / **hands-up** experience working with horses.

2. 
Sara has handed in her **letter** / **statement** / **notice** at work. She's going to study engineering.

3. 
After studying for many years, Anna embarked on a **job** / **career** / **work** as a surgeon.

4. 
I'm really bored at work, so I've decided to start job **looking** / **searching** / **hunting**.

5. 
Rory goes the extra **distance** / **mile** / **length** to make sure his customers are satisfied.

Aa 40.6 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

the pleasure you get from work = j o b s a t i s f a c t i o n

1. found a good job = l _ _ _ _ _ a j _ _
2. in a few words = i _ a n _ _ _ _ _ _ _
3. busy doing something else = t _ _ _ u _
4. does more than is expected = g _ _ _ t _ _ e _ _ _ _ m _ _ _
5. forced to leave a job = f _ _ _ _

41 Work and business 2

41.1 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT COLORS

There's a lot of red tape involved in health and safety in the warehouse.

administration, paperwork, or rules and regulations



We decided to blacklist this supplier after they sent us faulty products.

put on a list of untrustworthy people or organizations



My dad had a blue-collar job in the construction industry.

a job that involves manual or physical work



I have a white-collar job in an investment bank.

an office-based or administrative job



Our ski clothing stores are in the red because there hasn't been any snow this winter.

losing money, or in debt



Boris was given a golden handshake when he retired from the company. (UK)

a payment or gift from a company to someone who is leaving it



41.2 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT SPORTS

We've already reduced our price by 25 percent. The ball is in your court.

It is your turn to act.



Our boss is leaving the restaurant soon, and Angela is the front-runner to get his job.

the person or organization most likely to win something



We ask all our interview candidates the same questions to create a level playing field.

an environment in which everyone has equal opportunities



Emily is a team player. She works so well with all her colleagues at the bookstore.

a person who works well with other people



41.3 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT FOOD

Our new bags are selling like hotcakes. We need to order more.

selling quickly in large numbers



After many years in journalism, Simon became a big cheese in the media.

an important person in a company or industry



Evan is always asking me what to do. I feel like I have to spoon-feed him.

give too much help to



My gardening business is starting to bring home the bacon.

make money



I play in a band every weekend, but teaching guitar is my bread and butter.

main source of income



41.4 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT ANIMALS

I've decided to leave the rat race and move to the country.

a way of urban working life that puts people under pressure



Raul isn't our boss, but he still tries to be the top dog in our team. He's always telling us what to do.

the most important person



We made the lion's share of our profits last year from our new smartphone.

the largest part



Our range of cereal is a cash cow. It's cheap to make and customers love it.

a product or investment that gives you a steady income



My boss is a fat cat. He earns lots of money, but doesn't work very hard.

an overpaid and lazy person



Aa 41.5 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	I play in a band every weekend,	after they sent us faulty products.
1	I've decided to leave the rat race	in the construction industry.
2	My dad had a blue-collar job	but teaching guitar is my bread and butter.
3	We decided to blacklist this supplier	and move to the country.
4	After many years in journalism,	in health and safety in the warehouse.
5	There's a lot of red tape involved	Simon became a big cheese in the media.

41.6 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



There's a lot of *red tape* involved in health and safety in the warehouse.



3 I have _____ in an investment bank.



1 We ask all our interview candidates the same questions to create _____ .



4 Our new bags are _____ _____ . We need to order more.



2 Our range of cereal is _____ . It's cheap to make and customers love it.



5 Evan is always asking me what to do. I feel like I have to _____ him.

Aa 41.7 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

My boss is **a lazy cat**. He earns lots of money, but doesn't work very hard.

My boss is a fat cat. He earns lots of money, but doesn't work very hard.



1. We ask all our interview candidates the same questions to create **an equal playing field**.



2. Emily is **a sporting player**. She works so well with all her colleagues at the bookstore.



3. Our boss is leaving the restaurant soon, and Angela is **the front-winner** to get his job.



4. We've already reduced our price by 25 percent. **The ball is in your field.**



5. I play in a band every weekend, but teaching guitar is **my bread and cheese**.



6. Boris was given **a silver handshake** when he retired from the company.



Aa 41.8 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

a person who works well with other people = *a team player*

1. losing money, or in debt = _____
2. make money = _____
3. the largest part = _____
4. the most important person = _____
5. an office-based or administrative job = _____

42 Sports

42.1 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT SPORTS

The party was already in full swing when we arrived.

very busy and lively



I've failed my driving test for the tenth time. I think it's time to throw in the towel.

admit defeat, or stop trying to do something



Bruno has taken my parking space at work again. Right, the gloves are off!

an argument or competition will be very intense



Hiroto is really on the ball and never makes a mistake at work.

alert and efficient



Our client threw us a curveball when she said we'd have to cater for another 50 guests at her wedding.

did something surprising that was difficult to deal with



I often have to work evenings, but I knew the score when I decided to accept this job.

understood a situation, especially its disadvantages



This client keeps moving the goalposts. Now she wants the bedroom painted red.

changing the desired end result



We don't have enough time to train our employees properly. They'll just have to sink or swim.

succeed by their own efforts, or fail



At this stage of the game, it's difficult to say how long it will take to fix your roof.

at this point in the process



I was having a difficult meeting with my boss, but was saved by the bell when he got called into another meeting.

rescued from a difficult situation at the last minute



I'm trying to start my own business, and cleared a hurdle today when the bank agreed to lend me money.

successfully dealt with a problem



I've had cats and rabbits before, but looking after a dog is a whole new ball game.

a completely different situation



Sleepless nights are par for the course when you have a baby.

to be expected



We've got a lot of unpacking to do, so let's get the ball rolling.

start a process



The service in this restaurant is really below par. We've been waiting for our food for an hour!

not to the expected standard



The firefighters tackled the fire at the warehouse and made sure everyone got out safely.

dealt with



I'm sorry you didn't get through to the next round, Cameron. You win some, you lose some!

You can't succeed at everything.



I was thrown in at the deep end when my colleague was sick and I had to run the café on my own on my first day.

put in an unexpected and difficult situation



The plumber gave us a ballpark figure for the cost of the new bathroom.

an estimate



All our gardeners are really hardworking, but Hannah is in a league of her own.

outstanding; exceptionally talented



Aa 42.2 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

Sleepless nights are par for the field when you have a baby. ☐
Sleepless nights are par for the course when you have a baby. ☑

1. All our gardeners are really hardworking, but Hannah is in a league of her own. ☐
   All our gardeners are really hardworking, but Hannah is in a game of her own. ☐

2. This client keeps moving the net. Now she wants the bedroom painted red. ☐
   This client keeps moving the goalposts. Now she wants the bedroom painted red. ☐

3. We don't have enough time to train our employees properly. They'll just have to sink or float. ☐
   We don't have enough time to train our employees properly. They'll just have to sink or swim. ☐

4. We've got a lot of unpacking to do, so let's get the ball rolling. ☐
   We've got a lot of unpacking to do, so let's get the ball going. ☐

5. I often have to work evenings, but I knew the score when I decided to accept this job. ☐
   I often have to work evenings, but I knew the goal when I decided to accept this job. ☐

Aa 42.3 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT IDIOMS

	changing the desired end result	a ballpark figure
1	successfully dealt with a problem	par for the course
2	very busy and lively	moving the goalposts
3	an estimate	in full swing
4	to be expected	cleared a hurdle
5	not to the expected standard	on the ball
6	alert and efficient	get the ball rolling
7	start a process	below par

42.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE IDIOMS YOU HEAR

on the ball	☑	a whole new ball game	☐	get the ball rolling	☐
1 moving the goalposts	☐	the gloves are off	☐	in full swing	☐
2 at this stage of the game	☐	a whole new ball game	☐	sink or swim	☐
3 throw in the towel	☐	cleared a hurdle	☐	thrown in at the deep end	☐
4 saved by the bell	☐	a ballpark figure	☐	below par	☐
5 throw in the towel	☐	saved by the bell	☐	threw us a curveball	☐

Aa 42.5 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



The party was already *in full swing* when we arrived.



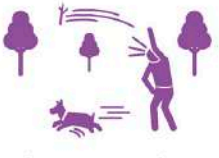
3 The plumber gave us _____ _____ for the cost of the new bathroom.



1 The firefighters _____ the fire at the warehouse and made sure everyone got out safely.



4 I'm sorry you didn't get through to the next round, Cameron. _____



2 I've had cats and rabbits before, but looking after a dog is _____.



5 I've failed my driving test for the tenth time. I think it's time to _____.

43 "Make" and "do"

43.1 EXPRESSIONS WITH "MAKE"

I made some friends from the local area while I was on vacation.



I was really pleased when Sue made a cake for my birthday.



These desserts all look so good! It's difficult to make a choice.



I made a phone call to our client in India to discuss some important business.



Doug is making progress on his new novel and hopes to finish it soon.



I was quite offended when Laura made a joke about my new sweater.



We're making arrangements for our summer vacation in Italy.



My daughter always makes her bed in the morning.



The children had fun painting, but they've really made a mess.



There's something wrong with the photocopier. It's making a strange noise.



43.2 EXPRESSIONS WITH "DO"

Luiz does the cooking every evening after he gets home from work.



Katy is doing well in her new job. She's getting lots of customers.



We did an experiment in the laboratory as part of our research project.



Do your best in the game today! I know you can beat the other team.



Paul and Liam do the laundry every Sunday so that they have clean clothes for work.



Can you do me a favor and get that book down from the shelf?



Zoe did her hair before her best friend's engagement party.



The flood did a lot of damage to our house, so we had to move out.



I always do my homework as soon as I get home from school.



I want to get fit, so I've started doing exercise every day.



Aa 43.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORD IN EACH SENTENCE

These desserts all look so good! It's difficult to **make** / ~~**do**~~ a choice.

1. Doug is **making** / **doing** progress on his new novel and hopes to finish it soon.
2. I want to get fit, so I've started **making** / **doing** exercise every day.
3. **Make** / **Do** your best in the game today! I know you can beat the other team.
4. There's something wrong with the photocopier. It's **making** / **doing** a strange noise.
5. I always **make** / **do** my homework as soon as I get home from school.
6. The children had fun painting, but they've really **made** / **done** a mess.
7. Can you **make** / **do** me a favor and get that book down from the shelf?

Aa 43.4 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



We're making arrangements for our summer vacation in Italy. ☑
We're doing arrangements for our summer vacation in Italy. ☐

1. 

Zoe made her hair before her best friend's engagement party. ☐
Zoe did her hair before her best friend's engagement party. ☐

2. 

I made a phone call to our client in India to discuss some important business. ☐
I did a phone call to our client in India to discuss some important business. ☐

3. 

I was quite offended when Laura made a joke about my new sweater. ☐
I was quite offended when Laura did a joke about my new sweater. ☐

4. 

The flood made a lot of damage to our house, so we had to move out. ☐
The flood did a lot of damage to our house, so we had to move out. ☐

5. 

We made an experiment in the laboratory as part of our research project. ☐
We did an experiment in the laboratory as part of our research project. ☐

43.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM



A ☐



B ☐



C 1



D ☐



E ☐



F ☐



G ☐



H ☐

Aa 43.6 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE CORRECT FORM OF "MAKE" OR "DO"

Katy is _____doing_____ well in her new job. She's getting lots of customers.

1. I _____ some friends from the local area while I was on vacation.
2. I always _____ my homework as soon as I get home from school.
3. We're _____ arrangements for our summer vacation in Italy.
4. I was really pleased when Sue _____ a cake for my birthday.
5. We _____ an experiment in the laboratory as part of our research project.
6. I was quite offended when Laura _____ a joke about my new sweater.
7. The flood _____ a lot of damage to our house, so we had to move out.
8. I want to get fit, so I've started _____ exercise every day.
9. My daughter always _____ her bed in the morning.
10. Can you _____ me a favor and get that book down from the shelf?

44 "Give" and "take"

44.1 EXPRESSIONS WITH "GIVE"

The interviewers asked me to give an example of my best work.



The professor gave a speech to the students about her new discovery.



I had a big suitcase, so Selma offered to give me a lift to the airport.



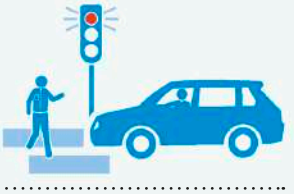
When Carole had her first baby, she chose to give birth in a hospital.



The dog gave the impression that he wanted to go out for a walk.



Drivers should always give priority to pedestrians.



Emily is giving a presentation about the company's sales figures.



My father gave me a hug when he heard I'd passed my final exam.



When Danny got to the hotel, he gave me a call to say he had arrived safely.



The journalist kept asking the politician to give an answer to the question.



44.2 EXPRESSIONS WITH "TAKE"

Jorge gets up very early, so he usually takes a nap after lunch.



Fiona asked us to take a look at her new motorcycle. She's really proud of it.



Zora took a bite from her piece of birthday cake. It was delicious!



Mario and I are taking a drawing class this evening.



Hamid took a photo of his class in front of the Colosseum.



The receptionist asked me to take a seat while I waited for the hairdresser.



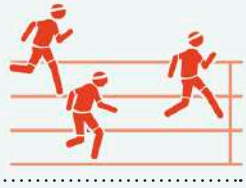
Dwayne likes to take a shower as soon as he gets home from work.



We decided to take a chance with the weather and set off on our hike.



Near the end of the race, Axel passed the other athletes and took the lead.



Oscar had to take a fitness test before working as a police officer.



Aa 44.3 WRITE THE EXPRESSIONS FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT VERBS

GIVE	TAKE
a presentation	

~~a presentation~~ an example a photo
a chance the impression a nap birth
a bite a shower a seat a speech priority
me a hug the lead an answer a look

Aa 44.4 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Dwayne likes to take a shower as soon as he gets home from work.

1 

Zora took a bite from her piece of birthday cake. It was delicious!

2 

Near the end of the race, Axel passed the other athletes and took the lead.

3 

Emily is giving a presentation about the company's sales figures.

4 

Hamid took a photo of his class in front of the Colosseum.

Aa 44.5 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	Dwayne likes to take a shower	that he wanted to go out for a walk.
1	I had a big suitcase, so Selma offered	a drawing class this evening.
2	The dog gave the impression	as soon as he gets home from work.
3	Mario and I are taking	to give me a lift to the airport.
4	The receptionist asked me to take	priority to pedestrians.
5	Drivers should always give	a seat while I waited for the hairdresser.

44.6 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

A Emily is giving a presentation about the company's sales figures. ☐

B Drivers should always give priority to pedestrians. 1

C Jorge gets up very early, so he usually takes a nap after lunch. ☐

D My father gave me a hug when he heard I'd passed my final exam. ☐

E When Carole had her first baby, she chose to give birth in a hospital. ☐

F Oscar had to take a fitness test before working as a police officer. ☐

G The interviewers asked me to give an example of my best work. ☐

Aa 44.7 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORD IN EACH SENTENCE



We decided to ~~give~~ / **take** a chance with the weather and set off on our hike.

1 

When Danny got to the hotel, he **gave** / **took** me a call to say he had arrived safely.

2 

Hamid **gave** / **took** a photo of his class in front of the Colosseum.

3 

The professor **gave** / **took** a speech to the students about her new discovery.

4 

Emily is **giving** / **taking** a presentation about the company's sales figures.

5 

Dwayne likes to **give** / **take** a shower as soon as he gets home from work.

45 "Have" and "get"

45.1 EXPRESSIONS WITH "HAVE"

Shreya's going to have a baby this summer.



Colin has a cold. He's staying at home today.



Lily had a conversation with another passenger on the train.



Tiffany had fun at the festival with her friends.



After gardening all morning, we were so tired that we needed to have a rest.



Michael and Heather had an argument about the rules of the game.



Sadiq has lunch in the park when the weather's nice.



I have an appointment to see the vet at 2 o'clock this afternoon.



Kylie had a party to celebrate her 18th birthday. It was great fun!



Sean and Lisa had a talk about the new design for the office.



45.2 EXPRESSIONS WITH "GET"

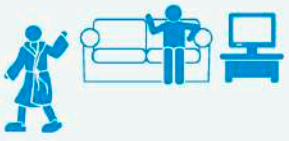
You really need to get going if you want to catch the train.



Kyle and Erin got lost in the forest when they couldn't read their map.



I need to go to bed now. I'm getting tired.



I usually get dressed after I've eaten my breakfast.



We finally got home at midnight after our flight was delayed.



Brian and Isha got married on a beautiful beach in Jamaica.



It was sunny today, but the weather is going to get worse tomorrow.



Claude is getting better at making cakes.



We finally got started on decorating the bedroom this morning.



Robin always gets angry when his children refuse to eat their food.



Aa 45.3 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



Colin has a cold. He's staying at home today. ☑
Colin gets a cold. He's staying at home today. ☐

1 

After gardening all morning, we were so tired that we needed to have a rest. ☐
After gardening all morning, we were so tired that we needed to get a rest. ☐

2 

I need to go to bed now. I'm getting tired. ☐
I need to go to bed now. I'm having tired. ☐

3 

Shreya's going to get a baby this summer. ☐
Shreya's going to have a baby this summer. ☐

4 

Michael and Heather got an argument about the rules of the game. ☐
Michael and Heather had an argument about the rules of the game. ☐

5 

Lily had a conversation with another passenger on the train. ☐
Lily got a conversation with another passenger on the train. ☐

45.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM



A ☐



B ☐



C 1



D ☐



E ☐



F ☐



G ☐



H ☐

Aa 45.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Shreya's going to **get a baby** this summer.
Shreya's going to have a baby this summer.



1. Robin always **has angry** when his children refuse to eat their food.



2. I **get an appointment** to see the vet at 2 o'clock this afternoon.



3. Sean and Lisa **got a talk** about the new design for the office.



4. Tiffany **got fun** at the festival with her friends.



Aa 45.6 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



I usually *get dressed* after I've eaten my breakfast.

1. 

Kylie _____ to celebrate her 18th birthday. It was great fun!

2. 

Claude is _____ at making cakes.

3. 

I need to go to bed now. I'm _____.

4. 

After gardening all morning, we were so tired that we needed to _____.

5. 

You really need to _____ if you want to catch the train.

46 "Set" and "put"

46.1 EXPRESSIONS WITH "SET"

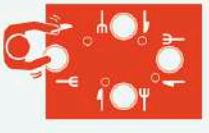
I had a long way to drive, so I set off nice and early.



Catalina has set the date for her wedding next summer.



Ed set the table before his guests arrived for dinner.



I set a trap to catch the mouse in the kitchen.



Mateo set an example for his children and ate all his vegetables.



I set homework for my students at the end of every lesson.



Silvio called the fire department after he accidentally set fire to his shed.



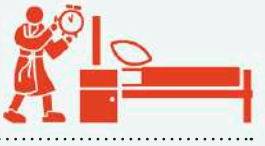
Judy was sad to see the birds trapped in their cage, so she set them free.



The ship set sail for China this morning. It will arrive in 20 days.



I have to get up early for work, so I always set an alarm before going to bed.



46.2 EXPRESSIONS WITH "PUT"

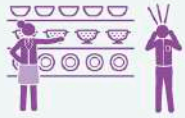
I always put off doing my homework until the last minute.

delay



My boss is putting pressure on me to sell all this kitchen equipment today.

trying to persuade someone to do something



Terry puts his family first. He always leaves work in time to meet his children after school.

gives one thing priority over everything else



The rangers have put a stop to people driving through the park to cut pollution.

made something stop happening



Irfan has put me in charge of the store while he is on vacation.

given me responsibility for



After telling my boss I was leaving my job, I put it in writing.

wrote it in a letter



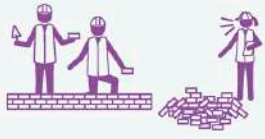
Karen decided to put her cards on the table and tell Ricky that she loved him.

express her feelings openly



Sakura has been putting the heat on the contractors to finish the job quickly.

trying to force someone to do something



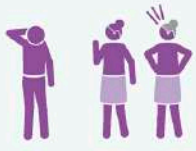
Seth isn't always the most hardworking employee. To put it bluntly, he's lazy.

say something simply and without being too polite



I really put my foot in it when I asked if Hazel was Tamsin's mother. They are actually sisters. (UK)

accidentally said something that upset someone



46.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- A My boss is putting pressure on me to sell all this kitchen equipment today. ☐
- B Ed set the table before his guests arrived for dinner. 1
- C I have to get up early for work, so I always set an alarm before going to bed. ☐
- D Irfan has put me in charge of the store while he is on vacation. ☐
- E Mateo set an example for his children and ate all his vegetables. ☐

Aa 46.4 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



After telling my boss I was leaving my job, I put it in writing.

1 

I always put off doing my homework until the last minute.

2 

Catalina has set the date for her wedding next summer.

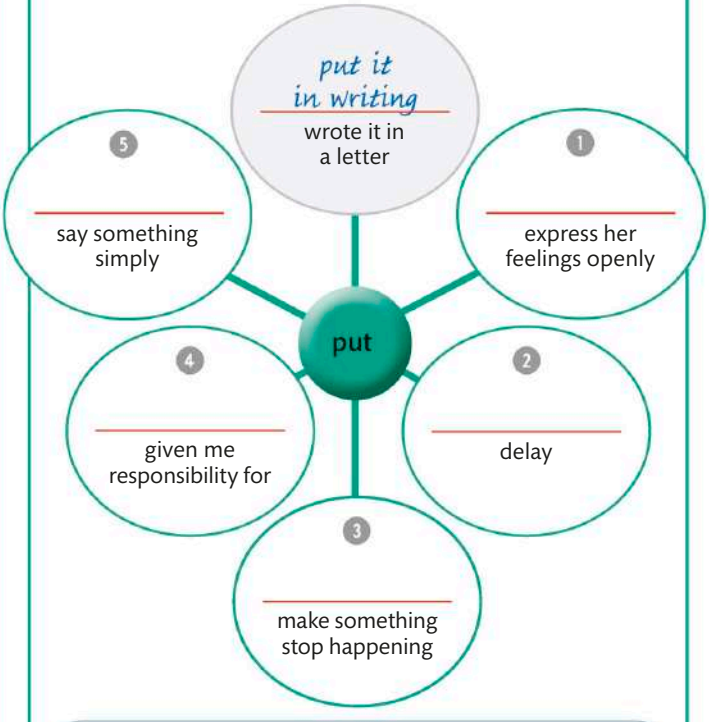
3 

I had a long way to drive, so I set off nice and early.

4 

I set homework for my students at the end of every lesson.

Aa 46.5 MATCH THE EXPRESSIONS TO THEIR DEFINITIONS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL



put off	~~put it in writing~~
put me in charge of	put a stop to
put it bluntly	put her cards on the table

Aa 46.6 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORD IN EACH SENTENCE



I **set** / ~~**put**~~ a trap to catch the mouse in the kitchen.

1. 
I really **set** / **put** my foot in it when I asked if Hazel was Tamsin's mother. They are actually sisters.

2. 
Judy was sad to see the birds trapped in their cage, so she **set** / **put** them free.

3. 
The ship **set** / **put** sail for China this morning. It will arrive in 20 days.

4. 
Terry **sets** / **puts** his family first. He always leaves work in time to meet his children after school.

5. 
Sakura has been **setting** / **putting** the heat on the contractors to finish the job quickly.

Aa 46.7 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	My boss is putting pressure on me	so I set off nice and early.
1	Silvio called the fire department	I put it in writing.
2	After telling my boss I was leaving my job,	to sell all this kitchen equipment today.
3	I had a long way to drive,	after he accidentally set fire to his shed.
4	I always put off doing my homework	the store while he is on vacation.
5	Ed set the table	until the last minute.
6	Irfan has put me in charge of	before his guests arrived for dinner.

47 "Go" and "come"

47.1 EXPRESSIONS WITH "GO"

Pavel likes to **go fishing** on Saturdays.



Dougie prefers to **go abroad** on vacation.



My kids **go crazy** whenever they hear that song.



My aunt's **going deaf**. You'll have to speak more loudly.



That style of shirt **went out of fashion** years ago!



This fruit has **gone bad**. It's not good to eat. (US)



My move **went smoothly**. I had lots of people helping me.



Everyone **went quiet** when the boss walked into the room.



Sara's fashion boutique **went bankrupt**. She couldn't afford the rent.



Joshua's dog has **gone missing**. He's putting up signs around town.



47.2 EXPRESSIONS WITH "COME"

The traffic **came to a standstill** because of a fallen tree on the road.



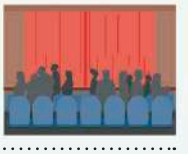
The climbers **came close** to reaching the peak but were too tired to continue.



The judges have **come to a decision** about the winner.



When the play **came to an end**, everyone left the theater.



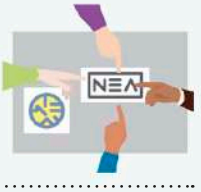
Paula trained very hard and **came in first** in the hurdles. (US)



Riya **came prepared** for the camping trip.



The team has **come to an agreement** about which logo design to use.



Everyone thought Gabrielle would win the race, but she **came in last**. (US)



We were stranded on the rocks until the lifeguards **came to the rescue**.



As we walked through the mountains, a ruined castle **came into view**.



Aa 47.3 WRITE THE WORDS FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT VERBS

GO	COME
bankrupt	

to a standstill close ~~bankrupt~~ quiet
abroad to a decision into view fishing
deaf to an agreement crazy in last
prepared to the rescue missing bad

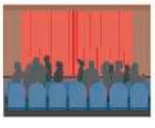
Aa 47.4 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



My kids go crazy whenever they hear that song.

1 

This fruit has gone bad. It's not good to eat.

2 

That style of shirt went out of fashion years ago!

3 

Riya came prepared for the camping trip.

4 

When the play came to an end, everyone left the theater.

47.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

A The climbers came close to reaching the peak but were too tired to continue. ☐
B Everyone thought Gabrielle would win the race, but she came in last. 1
C Pavel likes to go fishing on Saturdays. ☐
D My move went smoothly. I had lots of people helping me. ☐
E As we walked through the mountains, a ruined castle came into view. ☐
F The traffic came to a standstill because of a fallen tree on the road. ☐

Aa 47.6 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORD IN EACH SENTENCE

We were stranded on the rocks until the lifeguards ~~went~~ / **came** to the rescue.

1. This fruit has **gone** / **come** bad. It's not good to eat.
2. My aunt's **going** / **coming** deaf. You'll have to speak more loudly.
3. The judges have **gone** / **come** to a decision about the winner.
4. Sara's fashion boutique **went** / **came** bankrupt. She couldn't afford the rent.
5. Everyone **went** / **came** quiet when the boss walked into the room.
6. My move **went** / **came** smoothly. I had lots of people helping me.
7. The team has **gone** / **come** to an agreement about which logo design to use.

Aa 47.7 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES



As we walked through the mountains, a ruined castle *came into view* .



1. Joshua's dog has _____ . He's putting up signs around town.



2. We were stranded on the rocks until the lifeguards _____ .



3. Dougie prefers to _____ on vacation.



4. Pavel likes to _____ on Saturdays.



5. Paula trained very hard and _____ _____ in the hurdles.

48 Expressions with other verbs

48.1 EXPRESSIONS WITH "PAY"

I live with my parents, but **pay my way** by buying groceries.

contribute toward the cost of something



The children **paid close attention** to John as he told them about his travels.

listened or watched carefully



When our CEO retired, Nisha **paid tribute** to her with a wonderful speech.

publicly praised someone for their achievements



Kelly **paid me a compliment** and said she liked my new haircut.

said something nice about me



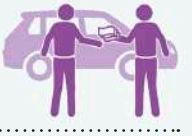
Two firefighters **paid a visit** to my son's school today to talk about fire safety.

visited



It was so kind of you to lend me that money to get my car fixed. I can **pay you back** now.

repay a loan



48.2 EXPRESSIONS WITH "HOLD"

We **hold a meeting** each Monday to discuss the week ahead.

have a meeting



Mark **holds a grudge** against me because I didn't give him a promotion last year.

is still angry about something that happened a long time ago



I had to **hold my tongue** when Julian showed me his new suit. It was horrible!

avoid saying what I really thought



I'm trying to call the bank and they've asked me to **hold the line**. It's so annoying! (UK)

wait for a telephone conversation to continue



48.3 EXPRESSIONS WITH "CATCH"

Raul **caught a glimpse of** a deer as he hiked through the forest.

saw very briefly



I must have **caught a cold** from that man who couldn't stop sneezing on the train.

become sick with a cold



After climbing the stairs, I stopped to **catch my breath**.

rest after exercise and breathe more slowly



We need to tell the waiter we're ready to order. Let's try and **catch his eye**.

get his attention



Don't stand so close to the stove. Your clothes could **catch fire**!

start to burn



Pari usually drives to work, but she **caught the train** this morning.

traveled by train



48.4 EXPRESSIONS WITH "KEEP"

It's important to **keep your distance** when you drive on busy roads.



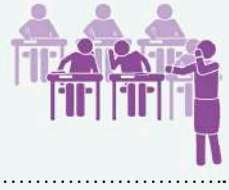
Cleo told me about her mom's surprise party but asked me to **keep it a secret**.



Natalie always **keeps calm** when she has to talk to angry customers.



The teacher asked the students to **keep quiet** during the test.

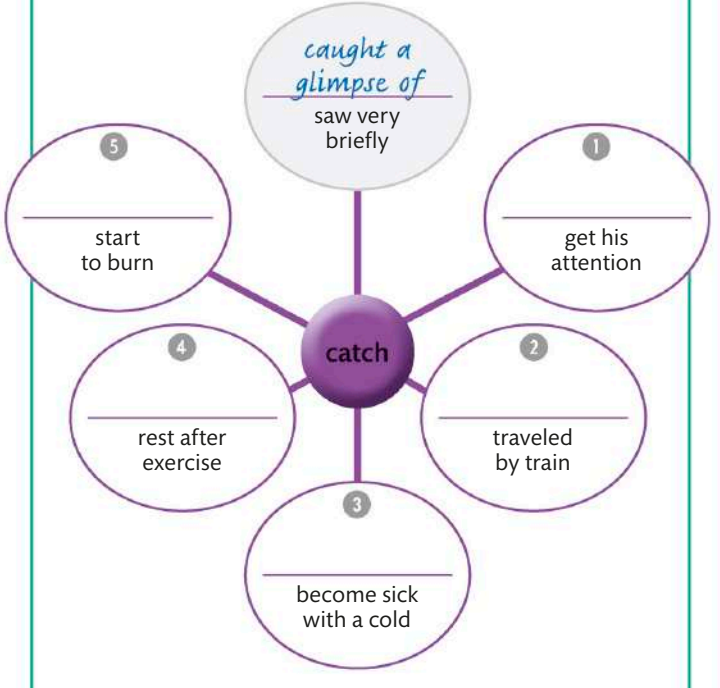


Aa 48.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

Mark ~~pays~~ / holds / ~~keeps~~ a grudge against me because I didn't give him a promotion last year.

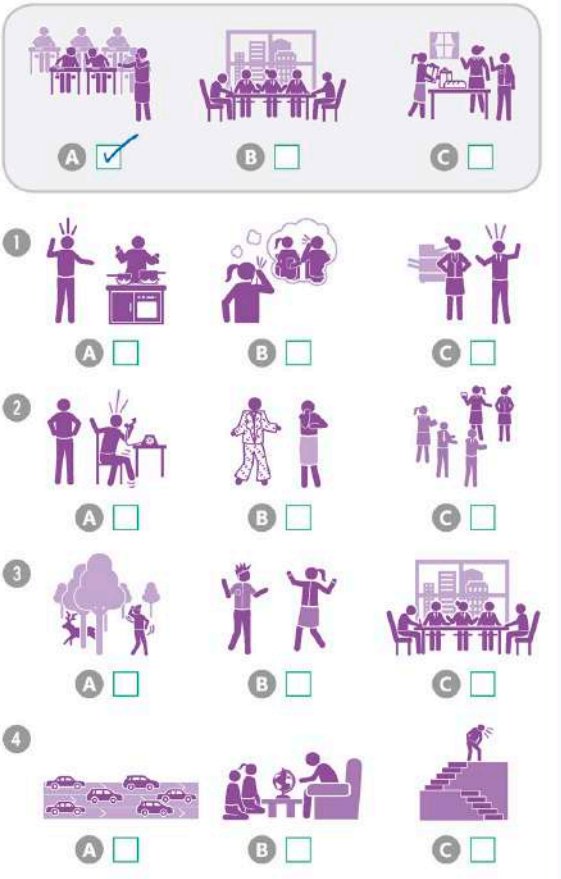
1. Two firefighters paid / held / kept a visit to my son's school today to talk about fire safety.
2. I'm trying to call the bank and they've asked me to hold / catch / keep the line. It's so annoying!
3. Cleo told me about her mom's surprise party but asked me to hold / catch / keep it a secret.
4. We pay / hold / keep a meeting each Monday to discuss the week ahead.

Aa 48.6 MATCH THE EXPRESSIONS TO THEIR DEFINITIONS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL



caught a cold | caught the train | catch fire | ~~caught a glimpse of~~ | catch his eye | catch my breath

48.7 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE CORRECT PICTURE FOR EACH SENTENCE YOU HEAR



Aa 48.8 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	It's important to keep your	to keep quiet during the test.
1	The teacher asked the students	pay my way by buying groceries.
2	The children paid close attention to John	distance when you drive on busy roads.
3	I live with my parents, but	and said she liked my new haircut.
4	Natalie always keeps calm	as he told them about his travels.
5	After climbing the stairs,	but she caught the train this morning.
6	Pari usually drives to work,	a deer as he hiked through the forest.
7	Raul caught a glimpse of	I stopped to catch my breath.
8	Kelly paid me a compliment	when she has to talk to angry customers.

Aa 48.9 WRITE THE CORRECT EXPRESSION NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

contribute toward the cost of something = pay my way

1. repay a loan = _____
2. publicly praised someone for their achievements = _____
3. avoid saying what I really thought = _____
4. wait for a telephone conversation to continue = _____
5. said something nice about me = _____
6. is still angry about something that happened a long time ago = _____
7. listened or watched carefully = _____

49 Intensifying adverbs

49.1 "ABSOLUTELY"

Use "absolutely" to intensify a statement that expresses an opinion.

This food is absolutely delicious. You're such a good cook!



The park is absolutely beautiful at this time of year.



Xavier's old computer was absolutely useless. He decided to throw it away.



The weather was absolutely fantastic when we went to Barbados. It was sunny every day.



49.2 "HIGHLY"

Use "highly" to intensify a statement about probability or praise.

It is highly probable that Leo is going to lose his job.



I highly recommend this book. I stayed up all night reading it!



It is highly unlikely that I'll be well enough to go to work tomorrow.



Cesar's new movie was highly praised by the critics.



49.3 "DEEPLY"

Use "deeply" to intensify a statement about emotions.

I was deeply hurt when Madison didn't invite me to her wedding.



Gina was deeply concerned when her cat didn't come home for his dinner.



49.4 "STRONGLY"

Use "strongly" to intensify advice or a statement about beliefs and values.

We strongly advise you not to travel unless it is absolutely necessary.



Malachi strongly believes in looking after the environment.



My uncle strongly feels that children shouldn't watch too much television.



49.5 "UNBELIEVABLY"

Use "unbelievably" to intensify a statement about extreme or unlikely situations.

I was unbelievably lucky to get my violin back after I left it on the train.



Some people can be unbelievably selfish when they are on the bus.



That date was unbelievably awkward. We had nothing to say to each other.



49.6 "RIDICULOUSLY"

Use "ridiculously" to intensify criticism or a statement of disbelief.

The clothes in that store are ridiculously expensive.



Sadie finished the test early. She thought it was ridiculously easy.



The portions in this restaurant are ridiculously small.



André gets up ridiculously early every morning.



49.7 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



I *highly recommend* this book. I stayed up all night reading it!

1. 
André gets up _____ every morning.

2. 
This food is _____. You're such a good cook!

3. 
We _____ you not to travel unless it is absolutely necessary.

4. 
That date was _____. We had nothing to say to each other.

5. 
Gina was _____ when her cat didn't come home for his dinner.

Aa 49.8 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	The clothes in that store	at this time of year.
1	Cesar's new movie was	didn't invite me to her wedding.
2	The park is absolutely beautiful	are ridiculously expensive.
3	I was deeply hurt when Madison	highly praised by the critics.
4	The portions in this restaurant	looking after the environment.
5	Malachi strongly believes in	are ridiculously small.

Aa 49.9 WRITE THE WORDS FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT ADVERB

ABSOLUTELY	HIGHLY	RIDICULOUSLY	STRONGLY
delicious			

unlikely easy ~~delicious~~ expensive believes probable
useless praised early feels fantastic advise

Aa 49.10 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



I was ~~highly~~ / deeply / ~~strongly~~ hurt when Madison didn't invite me to her wedding.

1 

I was absolutely / strongly / unbelievably lucky to get my violin back after I left it on the train.

2 

Gina was deeply / highly / absolutely concerned when her cat didn't come home for his dinner.

3 

I highly / ridiculously / deeply recommend this book. I stayed up all night reading it!

4 

Some people can be absolutely / unbelievably / strongly selfish when they are on the bus.

5 

Malachi strongly / highly / deeply believes in looking after the environment.

50 Similes

50.1 SIMILES WITH "AS"

Mary's car is as old as the hills. She refuses to buy a new one.



My grandmother is as deaf as a post. She always turns up the TV really loud.



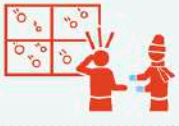
Andrei went as white as a sheet when he saw a spider in his bedroom.



The children were as good as gold while they stayed with their grandmother.



Have you been out in the snow? Your hands are as cold as ice!



These new high-speed trains are great! They're as fast as lightning.



I don't need help carrying my bag. It's as light as a feather.



There was no rain for months, and the land was as dry as a bone.



50.3 SIMILES WITH "LIKE"

Selma slept like a log after a long day climbing in the Alps.



Roy's new suit fits like a glove. He looks really good.



50.2 SIMILES USING VOCABULARY ABOUT ANIMALS

Paul is as quiet as a mouse.
He never talks in meetings.



Naomi was as brave as a lion and confronted the school bully in the playground.



I'm recovering from the flu, and I still feel as weak as a kitten.



My grandfather is as wise as an owl.
He always gives good advice.



Javier was as busy as a bee getting ready for the party.



I'm as blind as a bat without my glasses.



Fiona looked as proud as a peacock in her new hat.



My uncle is as strong as an ox.
He's a champion weightlifter.



I was shaking like a leaf before I went into the cave.



We had to run like the wind to catch that bus!



Aa 50.4 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



We had to run like the ~~fire~~ / ~~water~~ / **wind** to catch that bus!

1 

I don't need help carrying my bag. It's as light as a **bird** / **mouse** / **feather**.

2 

My uncle is as strong as an **eagle** / **ox** / **elephant**. He's a champion weightlifter.

3 

My grandfather is as **wise** / **clever** / **bright** as an owl. He always gives good advice.

4 

I'm as blind as a **mole** / **bat** / **worm** without my glasses.

5 

Paul is as quiet as a **mouse** / **sheep** / **fish**. He never talks in meetings.

Aa 50.5 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

a | weak | as | kitten | as

I'm recovering from the flu, and I still feel *as* *weak* *as* *a* *kitten*.

bone | as | dry | a | as

1 There was no rain for months, and the land was _____.

a | as | peacock | as | proud

2 Fiona looked _____ in her new hat.

hills | old | as | the | as

3 Mary's car is _____. She refuses to buy a new one.

like | log | a | slept

4 Selma _____ after a long day climbing in the Alps.

Aa 50.6 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SIMILES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	as strong	as gold
1	as good	as a post
2	as deaf	as an ox
3	shaking	as lightning
4	as white	like a leaf
5	as fast	as a lion
6	as brave	as a sheet

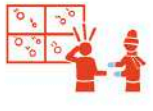
50.7 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE SIMILES YOU HEAR

- A as proud as a peacock ☑
- B as light as a feather ☐
- C as weak as a kitten ☐
- D as cold as ice ☐
- E as wise as an owl ☐
- F as blind as a bat ☐
- G as white as a sheet ☐
- H run like the wind ☐
- I as quiet as a mouse ☐

Aa 50.8 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING SIMILES



Selma _slept like a log_ after a long day climbing in the Alps.



1 Have you been out in the snow? Your hands are _____ !



2 Mary's car is _____ _____ . She refuses to buy a new one.



3 Javier was _____ getting ready for the party.



4 Roy's new suit _____ . He looks really good.



5 My grandmother is _____ _____ . She always turns up the TV really loud.

51 Proverbs

51.1 COMMON ENGLISH PROVERBS

Don't go into that spooky house! Curiosity killed the cat.



Being too curious can get you into trouble.

Azra adores her pet snake. I suppose beauty is in the eye of the beholder.



everyone has their own idea of what is beautiful

I can't follow directions unless I have a map. A picture is worth a thousand words.



It is easier to show something in a picture than to describe it using words.

Jakob really misses his girlfriend now that she has gone to college. Absence makes the heart grow fonder.



Being away from someone you love makes you love them more.

Don't just say you're going to clean your room, do it! Actions speak louder than words.



What you do matters more than what you say.

I was so pleased when I finally managed to sell my house for a good price. All good things come to those who wait.



If you wait for something good, you will eventually get it.

You were meant to give me this assignment a week ago, but better late than never.



it's better for something to happen late than not to happen at all

Flo's incompetence at work is affecting the whole team. A chain is only as strong as its weakest link.



A team is only as strong as its weakest member.

Don't count your chickens before they hatch, Kim! The game isn't over yet.



don't assume that something will happen before the outcome is certain

Stop sitting by the phone waiting to hear if you got the job. A watched pot never boils.



Time will pass more quickly if you keep busy while you're waiting for something.

Stop complaining about your toothache and call the dentist. There's no time like the present.

It's better to do things now than wait.



I asked Sofia to help me write this difficult report. Two heads are better than one.

It's helpful to have the advice of a second person.



I'm so glad I told Amira I was stressed at work. A problem shared is a problem halved.

If you tell someone about a problem, you'll feel better.



The day the sales began, Tamsin was outside the store at 6 in the morning. The early bird catches the worm.

The person who arrives early or acts quickly will get what they want.



Logan said the shelf fell down because his drill was broken, but a bad workman always blames his tools.

people who are bad at something blame the equipment they use



I've been playing the trumpet every day and I'm really improving. Practice makes perfect.

Practicing something will make you very good at it.



I told Sam about a great job, but he didn't apply. You can lead a horse to water, but you can't make it drink.

You can make something easier for someone, but you can't force them to do it.



We're almost ready for the party and we've still got plenty of time. Many hands make light work.

Things get done quickly when lots of people help.



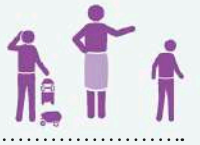
I know he looks a bit scary, but my dog's really gentle. You can't judge a book by its cover.

You shouldn't make judgments based on appearance.



I think you should tell Carlo that it was you who broke his skateboard. Honesty is the best policy.

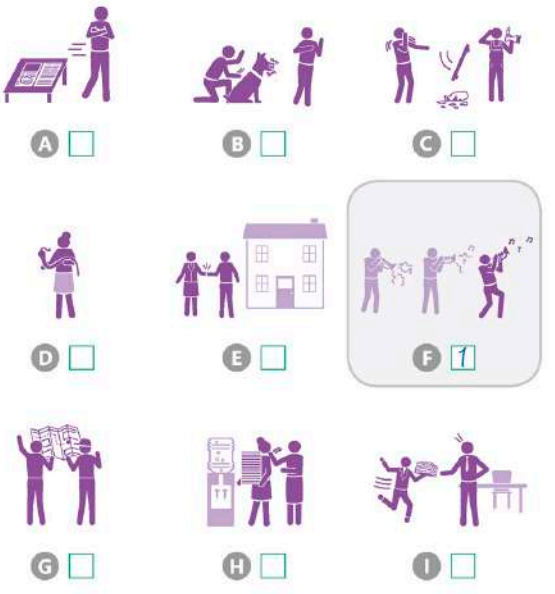
It's always better to tell the truth.



Aa 51.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE PROVERBS TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	The early bird	better than one.
1	Honesty is	make light work.
2	Many hands	catches the worm.
3	There's no time	the best policy.
4	Two heads are	than never.
5	Curiosity killed	like the present.
6	Better late	louder than words.
7	Actions speak	the cat.

51.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM



Aa 51.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Don't just say you're going to clean your room, do it! **Actions talk louder than words.**
Don't just say you're going to clean your room, do it! Actions speak louder than words.

1. **Don't count your geese before they hatch**, Kim! The game isn't over yet.

2. Stop sitting by the phone waiting to hear if you got the job. **A watched kettle never boils.**

3. I've been playing the trumpet every day and I'm really improving. **Practice becomes perfect.**

4. Azra adores her pet snake. I suppose **beauty is in the eye of the owner.**

Aa 51.5 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Flo's incompetence at work is affecting the whole team. A chain is only as strong as its weakest link.

1 

I asked Sofia to help me write this difficult report. Two heads are better than one.

2 

Jakob really misses his girlfriend now that she has gone to college. Absence makes the heart grow fonder.

3 

We're almost ready for the party and we've still got plenty of time. Many hands make light work.

4 

You were meant to give me this assignment a week ago, but better late than never.

5 

The day the sales began, Tamsin was outside the store at 6 in the morning. The early bird catches the worm!

Aa 51.6 WRITE THE CORRECT PROVERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

Things get done quickly when lots of people help. = *Many hands make light work.*

1 It's better to do things now than wait. = _____

2 It's always better to tell the truth. = _____

3 Being too curious can get you into trouble. = _____

4 What you do matters more than what you say. = _____

52 Easily confused words 1

52.1 "LOOK AT," "SEE," AND "WATCH"

Use "look at" to talk about paying attention to something or someone.

Come outside and look at the flowers I planted last month.



Use "see" to talk about noticing something.

I saw Keiko's large ginger cat lying on the lawn.



Use "watch" to talk about observing something over a period of time.

The cat watched the birds sitting in a tree.



52.2 "WAIT," "EXPECT," AND "LOOK FORWARD TO"

Use "wait" to talk about staying in the same place before something happens.

I'm going to a party tonight. I've been waiting for the bus for 10 minutes.



Use "expect" to talk about what people think will happen in the future.

I expect that there will be lots of people at the party.



Use "look forward to" to talk about feeling excited about a future event.

I'm really looking forward to seeing the fireworks display at the party.



52.3 "LISTEN TO" AND "HEAR"

Use "listen to" to talk about paying attention over a period of time to a sound.

Jules often listens to music on his walk home from work.



Use "hear" to talk about suddenly noticing a sound.

Suddenly, Jules heard a loud bang coming from behind him.



52.4 "WIN" AND "BEAT"

Use "win" to talk about achieving or gaining something.

The Lions have won the soccer championship again.



Use "beat" to talk about a victory over an opponent.

The Lions beat the Stars 3–1.



52.5 "BORROW" AND "LEND"

Use "borrow" to talk about receiving something for a short time.

My laptop's broken and I have to apply for a job tonight. Could I borrow yours, please?



Use "lend" to talk about giving something to someone else for a short time.

Yes, I will lend you my laptop, but please be careful with it.



52.6 "WISH" AND "HOPE"

Use "wish" to talk about situations that you would like to happen but are impossible.

I wish my test results were better.



Use "hope" to talk about situations that are still possible in the future.

I hope I still get into college.



52.7 "SMELL" AND "FEEL"

Use "smell" to talk about the scent or odor of something.

This pie that you've been baking smells delicious!



Use "feel" to talk about experiencing a sensation or emotion.

It's making me feel hungry.



Aa 52.8 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORD IN EACH SENTENCE



The Lions have **won** / ~~**beaten**~~ the soccer championship again.

1 

Yes, I will **borrow** / **lend** you my laptop, but please be careful with it.

2 

I **wait** / **expect** that there will be lots of people at the party.

3 

I **wish** / **hope** I still get into college.

4 

Suddenly, Jules **listened to** / **heard** a loud bang coming from behind him.

5 

This pie that you've been baking **smells** / **feels** delicious!

Aa 52.9 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL

I'm really *looking forward to* seeing the fireworks display at the party.

1 Jules often _____ music on his walk home from work.

2 Come outside and _____ the flowers I planted last month.

3 The Lions have _____ the soccer championship again.

4 The Lions _____ the Stars 3–1.

5 I _____ Keiko's large ginger cat lying on the lawn.

won | listens to | saw | look at | ~~looking forward to~~ | beat

Aa 52.10 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

	Yes, I will lend you my laptop,	test results were better.
1	The cat watched the birds	lots of people at the party.
2	I wish my	but please be careful with it.
3	This pie that you've been baking	the flowers I planted last month.
4	Suddenly, Jules heard a loud bang	sitting in a tree.
5	I expect that there will be	coming from behind him.
6	Come outside and look at	smells delicious!
7	The Lions have won	seeing the fireworks display at the party.
8	I'm really looking forward to	music on his walk home from work.
9	Jules often listens to	the soccer championship again.

52.11 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM



A ☐



B ☐



C 1



D ☐



E ☐



F ☐



G ☐



H ☐

53 Easily confused words 2

53.1 "DAMAGE," "INJURE," AND "HURT"

Use "damage" to talk about causing harm to an object or thing.

Colm damaged Sheila's vase when he dropped it.



Use "injure" (or "hurt") to talk about causing harm or pain to a person or a part of the body.

Colm injured his foot when he dropped the vase.



Use "hurt" to talk about feeling pain. You can't use "injure" to talk about feeling pain.

Colm's foot still hurt for days after the accident.



53.2 "LOAD," "FILL UP," AND "CHARGE"

Use "load" to talk about putting objects into something, usually a vehicle.

Can you help me load the car with everything we need for the beach?



Use "fill up" or "fill" to talk about putting something, usually a liquid, into a container.

Don't forget to bring water. I'll fill up some bottles for us.



Use "charge" to talk about giving a battery-operated device electricity that can be stored.

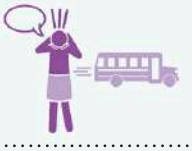
Wait a minute! I need to charge my phone before we go.



53.3 "SAY" AND "TELL"

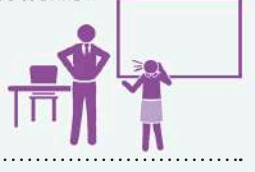
When you use "say," you don't have to state who a person is talking to.

"Oh, no," said Kayleigh. "I've left my school bag on the bus with all my homework in it."



When you use "tell," you must state who a person is talking to.

Kayleigh had to tell her teacher that she had left her homework on the bus.



53.4 "WEAR" AND "CARRY"

Use "wear" to talk about having clothing on your body.

Nina wore her new dress to Jack's party.



Use "carry" to talk about bringing an object from one place to another.

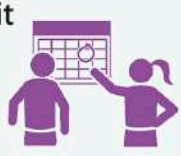
Arnold carried Jack's birthday cake into the dining room.



53.5 "REMIND" AND "REMEMBER"

Use "remind" to talk about making someone remember something.

Silvia reminded Sanjay to visit his mother on her birthday.



Use "remember" to talk about keeping something in your mind.

Sanjay remembered to visit his mother, who was delighted to see him.



53.6 "SENSIBLE" AND "SENSITIVE"

Use "sensible" to describe a person or a course of action that shows good judgment.

Are you sure you want to buy that car? It would be more sensible to save your money.



Use "sensitive" to describe a person who feels emotions strongly and easily gets upset.

There's no need to be so sensitive! I was only trying to give you advice.



53.7 "JOB" AND "WORK"

Use "job" to describe the specific role someone has in a workplace.

I have a job as a sales assistant in a supermarket.



Use "work" to talk about the activities that someone carries out in a workplace.

There is lots of work to do. I have to stack shelves and serve customers.



Aa 53.8 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



"Oh, no," said Kayleigh. "I've left my school bag on the bus with all my homework in it."

1 

Sanjay remembered to visit his mother, who was delighted to see him.

2 

There is lots of work to do. I have to stack shelves and serve customers.

3 

Are you sure you want to buy that car? It would be more sensible to save your money.

4 

Colm injured his foot when he dropped the vase.

Aa 53.9 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

Kayleigh had to say her teacher that she had left her homework on the bus. ☐
Kayleigh had to tell her teacher that she had left her homework on the bus. ☑

1 Colm's foot still hurt for days after the accident. ☐
Colm's foot still injured for days after the accident. ☐

2 Wait a minute! I need to load my phone before we go. ☐
Wait a minute! I need to charge my phone before we go. ☐

3 Silvia remembered Sanjay to visit his mother on her birthday. ☐
Silvia reminded Sanjay to visit his mother on her birthday. ☐

4 I have a job as a sales assistant in a supermarket. ☐
I have a work as a sales assistant in a supermarket. ☐

53.10 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- (A) Don't forget to bring water. I'll fill up some bottles for us. ☐
- (B) Arnold carried Jack's birthday cake into the dining room. ☐
- (C) Colm injured his foot when he dropped the vase. ☐
- (D) Can you help me load the car with everything we need for the beach? ☐
- (E) Colm's foot still hurt for days after the accident. ☐
- (F) Colm damaged Sheila's vase when he dropped it. ☐
- (G) Nina wore her new dress to Jack's party. 1
- (H) Wait a minute! I need to charge my phone before we go. ☐

Aa 53.11 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

I have a **work** as a sales assistant in a supermarket.
I have a job as a sales assistant in a supermarket.

1. There's no need to be so **sensible**! I was only trying to give you advice.



2. Kayleigh had to **say** her teacher that she had left her homework on the bus.



3. Colm **injured** Sheila's vase when he dropped it.



4. Sanjay **reminded** to visit his mother, who was delighted to see him.



5. Nina **carried** her new dress to Jack's party.



6. Don't forget to bring water. I'll **load** some bottles for us.



54 Colors

54.1 IDIOMS USING VOCABULARY ABOUT COLORS

The party was a black-tie event and everyone was really well dressed.

an event for which people have to dress very formally



Paula has a green thumb. She has so many beautiful plants in her house. (US)

a talent for gardening



The day I received my degree was a red-letter day for me.

an important or happy day



The actress made her first appearance on the silver screen in the 1950s.

in a movie



Sergio got a black eye after he walked into a lamppost.

a bruise around the eye



Layla was green with envy when her brother won the lottery.

very jealous



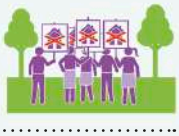
Alyssa knocked on my door out of the blue yesterday. I hadn't seen her for years!

unexpectedly



We're protesting against plans to build houses on the green belt in our local area.

fields or parks around a town or city



I hate the winter! It's only 4 o'clock and it's already pitch black outside.

very dark



It's my birthday, so I'm going to paint the town red with my friends tonight.

go out and celebrate enthusiastically



Fake designer goods are sold on **the black market**.

the illegal buying and selling of goods



I thought my new boss was really nice, but he **showed his true colors** when I forgot to put sugar in his coffee.

showed his real character and feelings



Ela **turned beet-red** when I caught her copying my homework. (US)

blushed, was very embarrassed



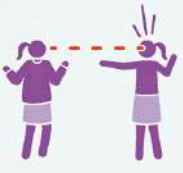
Larry was **black and blue** after falling down the stairs.

badly bruised



Jo **saw red** when she found her sister wearing her sweater.

became angry



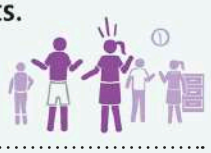
Francis only cleans his house **once in a blue moon**.

very rarely



There's **a gray area** in the office dress code. My boss said it was casual, but she told me I couldn't wear shorts.

a situation where the rules are unclear



I want to be a teacher, so getting work experience at the school was **a golden opportunity** for me.

a good chance to do something rewarding or get something valuable



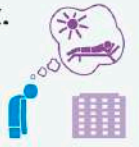
The boys were **caught red-handed** when they tried to break into the house.

caught doing something wrong



I always **get the blues** when my vacation is over and I have to go back to work.

feel sad



54.2 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE IDIOMS YOU HEAR

a black eye ☑ saw red ☐ a gray area ☐

1. a red-letter day ☐ paint the town red ☐ saw red ☐
2. black and blue ☐ out of the blue ☐ pitch black ☐
3. a gray area ☐ a green thumb ☐ the green belt ☐
4. black and blue ☐ a black eye ☐ out of the blue ☐
5. turned beet-red ☐ saw red ☐ caught red-handed ☐
6. a black-tie event ☐ black and blue ☐ pitch black ☐
7. green with envy ☐ a green thumb ☐ the green belt ☐

54.3 READ THE LETTER AND CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS

Hi Sandra,
Alyssa knocked on my door out of the blue / ~~green~~ yesterday. I hadn't seen her for years! She said she was going to paint the town gold / red for her birthday next week, and invited me along, too. You know I only go out once in a white / blue moon, so I thought it would be a silver / golden opportunity to meet some new friends. She said I could bring a friend along. Would you like to come with me?
Love,
Janice

54.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

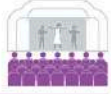
Francis only cleans his house **once in a pink moon**.
Francis only cleans his house once in a blue moon.



1. Sergio got **a blue eye** after he walked into a lamppost.



2. The actress made her first appearance **on the golden screen** in the 1950s.



3. I always **get the grays** when my vacation is over and I have to go back to work.



4. The boys were **caught blue-handed** when they tried to break into the house.

Aa 54.5 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



There's a gray area in the office dress code. My boss said it was casual, but she told me I couldn't wear shorts.

1 

It's my birthday, so I'm going to paint the town red with my friends tonight.

2 

I thought my new boss was really nice, but he showed his true colors when I forgot to put sugar in his coffee.

3 

I want to be a teacher, so getting work experience at the school was a golden opportunity for me.

4 

We're protesting against plans to build houses on the green belt in our local area.

5 

Fake designer goods are sold on the black market.

Aa 54.6 WRITE THE CORRECT IDIOM NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

an important or happy day = a r e d - l e t t e r d a y

1 badly bruised = b _ _ _ _ a _ _ _ b _ _ _ _

2 became angry = s _ _ _ r _ _ _

3 a talent for gardening = a g _ _ _ _ _ t _ _ _ _ _

4 very jealous = g _ _ _ _ _ w _ _ _ _ e _ _ _ _

5 unexpectedly = o _ _ _ o _ _ t _ _ _ b _ _ _ _

Answers

01

1.3

YOUNG:
bright young things
tender age
knee-high to a grasshopper

OLD:
no spring chicken
over the hill
great age

1.4

1. Becky's worried she's **getting on in years** after spotting more gray hairs.
2. Damien's at **that awkward age** and finds it hard to talk to people.
3. My grandpa got married again at the **ripe old age** of 92.
4. This TV show **bridges the generation gap**. The whole family loves it.
5. I **feel my age** when I go shopping with my children.

1.5

1. I'm too **long in the tooth** to try out skydiving.
2. My assistant is a bit **wet behind the ears**. He still has a lot to learn.
3. Derek and Joan spent their **twilight years** traveling the world.
4. In many countries, there is a big celebration when young people **come of age**.
5. Angela might be 84, but she is still **young at heart**.
6. Sanjay feels **as old as the hills** when his kids talk about technology.

1.6

1. improve with age
2. over the hill
3. great age
4. twilight years
5. young at heart
6. tender age

02

2.3

1. a family heirloom
2. a fair-weather friend
3. losing touch with
4. a soulmate
5. drifted apart
6. extended family

2.4

A 6 B 4 C 1 D 7 E 2 F 8 G 5 H 3

2.5

1. We're moving to a bigger house because we're hoping to **start** a family soon.
2. My wife and I **hit** it off immediately when we first met at a country music concert.
3. Uncle Tony is the black **sheep** of the family. He's been to prison three times.
4. Cy and I got off on the wrong **foot** on our date. He was an hour late and forgot my name.
5. Ramón and Tara get on like a **house** on fire. They're always talking and laughing.

2.6

1. We're **bringing up** our children to be kind to animals.
2. Marie and Pierre met through Isaac, **a mutual friend** of theirs.
3. Curly hair **runs in our family**, and my daughter, mom, and I all have it.
4. I've **kept in touch with** Lin since we left college 25 years ago.
5. Jade is **a family friend**. She grew up on the same street as us.

03

3.4

1. My aunt is a well-respected person.
2. Philip has always been wealthy.
3. Bob is from the wrong social background.
4. Clara looked extremely glamorous.
5. She is descended from important people.

3.5

1. Edie **looks like butter wouldn't melt in her mouth**, but she's actually really naughty.
2. Oscar is only 25, but he's already **getting thin on top**.
3. My aunt believed in **keeping up appearances** despite having little money.
4. Nalini **never has a hair out of place**. She cares a lot about her appearance.
5. Milan returned home with **five o'clock shadow** after a long day at the office.

3.6

1. Domenica **looked the part** for her first day of work at the bank.
2. Clara **looked like a million bucks** when she arrived for her wedding.
3. Mateo and his brother Lucas are **like two peas in a pod**. I can't tell them apart.
4. Karen is **the spitting image of** that actor in the new sci-fi film.
5. Rita **looked like she'd seen a ghost** after I told her my news.
6. Rachel **looked like a drowned rat** after she got caught in the rain on her way home.

3.7

1. all skin and bones
2. the spitting image of
3. getting thin on top
4. five o'clock shadow
5. a highflier

04

4.4

1. It was great to see Jasmine at the party. She's always a barrel of laughs.
2. Bob is such a crybaby. He was very upset about not getting a perfect score.
3. Don't be afraid of Linda. Her bark is worse than her bite.
4. Jim's a good egg. He helped me to move last week.
5. Gustav has a selfish streak. He won't share his cookies with his friends.
6. Debbie's a tough cookie. She doesn't mind when people criticize her work.

4.5

A 4 B 6 C 2 D 1 E 8 F 3 G 5 H 7

4.6

1. Noah is really down to earth. He earns lots of money, but he lives in a little cottage.
2. My dad's just an average Joe. He enjoys burgers and fries, and he loves watching baseball.
3. Tony wouldn't say boo to a goose. He gets really shy when he talks to customers.
4. Norah is such a fuddy-duddy. She never wants to come out with us on Saturday night.
5. Arturo is so two-faced. He said he liked my haircut but told his friends he hated it.

4.7

1. Her bark is worse than her bite.
2. as cool as a cucumber
3. as bold as brass
4. a barrel of laughs
5. wouldn't hurt a fly

05

5.2

1. My kids think this TV show is **the best thing since sliced bread**.
2. We had a wonderful boat trip. **The icing on the cake** was seeing some dolphins.
3. Chan's store only sells watches that are **top of the line**.
4. **The crème de la crème** of the fashion world were at the launch party.

5.3

A 2 B 6 C 1 D 5 E 4 F 3

5.4

1. out of this world
2. the best of both worlds
3. second to none
4. stole the show
5. the crème de la crème
6. the bee's knees
7. a blessing in disguise

5.5

1. highest quality
2. the best part of a good experience
3. excellent reviews
4. really likes or admires
5. that she has fantasized about having

5.6

1. **World-class** athletes need to train for a few hours every day.
2. Marcelo **stole the show** with his amazing singing.
3. **The crème de la crème** of the fashion world were at the launch party.
4. Walking to work gives me **the best of both worlds**. It helps me save money and get fit.
5. The burgers in Max's diner are **to die for**. And they're huge!

06

6.2

1. cheap and nasty
2. like watching paint dry
3. past its sell-by date
4. a fate worse than death
5. not my cup of tea
6. rough around the edges

6.3

1. The museum in my town is nothing to **write** home about. There are very few exhibits.
2. The weather in Hawaii didn't **live** up to expectations. It rained every day.
3. Rita's TV is on its last **legs**. She's had it for over 10 years.
4. The clothes in this store are second **rate**. They don't last very long.
5. Pete's habit of dropping litter leaves a bad **taste** in my mouth.

6.4

1. I told my roommate to move out. **The last straw** was when she broke my favorite mug.
2. Sales **fell short of expectations** last month. We need to do better this month.
3. I know everyone else loves it, but this book is **not all that it's cracked up to be**.
4. I'm afraid this product just **isn't up to scratch**, Kyle.
5. His voice is OK, but he's **not going to set the world on fire**.

6.5

1. moth-eaten
2. a let-down
3. past its prime
4. second rate
5. cheap and nasty

07

7.2

A 6 B 3 C 5 D 2 E 1 F 4

7.3

1. It really gets my goat when someone eats smelly food on the train.
2. You're barking up the wrong tree if you think I can help you with your homework. I'm terrible at science.
3. Rachel always gets on her high horse about being a vegetarian. It's so annoying!
4. Bill looked like the cat that got the cream when he won the competition.
5. Our falling profits are the elephant in the room at every team meeting.

7.4

1. I tried to fix the photocopier, but I've really made a **pig's** ear of it.
2. My colleagues all have terrible colds. They're **dropping** like flies!
3. Ruby is a one-trick **pony**. She's a great singer, but she can't dance or act.
4. I **chickened** out of diving off the top board in the pool. It was too high!
5. Clarita's new apartment is tiny. There's not enough room to swing a **cat**.

7.5

1. gets my goat
2. not enough room to swing a cat
3. a bird's-eye view
4. a scaredy-cat
5. The world is your oyster.
6. like a deer in headlights

08

8.2

1. We're usually packed like sardines **on the bus to work in the morning.**
2. My granddaughter is the apple of my eye. **I'm so proud of her.**
3. We thought our walk would be really hilly, **but the land was as flat as a pancake.**
4. I felt warm and toasty **sitting in front of the fire.**
5. I don't like my job, **but it puts food on the table.**
6. You have to walk on eggshells around Dylan. **He gets upset so easily.**

8.3

1. I know Aiden's always late, but arriving late for his own wedding takes the cake!
2. I'm really stressed! I think I bit off more than I could chew when I took this promotion.
3. Fiona told me she doesn't like my new scooter. I think it's just sour grapes.
4. Asher is such a butterfingers. He is always dropping things.
5. Copies of Sadie's new novel are selling like hotcakes after it got great reviews.

8.4

1 B 2 C 3 A 4 B 5 A

8.5

1. eat humble pie
2. a couch potato
3. spoon-feeds
4. walk on eggshells
5. sugarcoat

09

9.4

1. My neighbor and I have **buried the hatchet** after arguing about the parking.
2. The negotiating teams stayed up all night **hammering out a deal.**
3. The government has **given the green light to** the construction of a new train station.
4. My girlfriend and I have **agreed to disagree** about what to do on vacation.

9.5

A 7 B 1 C 9 D 3 E 6 F 2 G 4 H 5 I 8

9.6

Hi Fiona,
How are you? I had some problems at work recently. My boss and I are usually on the same **page** about work, but we were at **odds** about my hours. She jumped down my **throat** when I said I couldn't work this weekend. We found the **middle** ground when I agreed to stay late on Friday.
See you soon,
Pablo

9.7

1. Diana and I reached a compromise about what movie to watch tonight.
2. Fran's dad gave her the thumbs-up to go out with her friends.
3. I tried to smooth things over between Pari and Toni after their argument.
4. Lenka and I fought like cats and dogs when we were children.
5. Samira has been given the go-ahead to play tennis after her injury.

9.8

1. held out an olive branch
2. on the same page
3. at odds
4. struck a deal
5. gave her the thumbs-up

10

10.5

1. Yoshiko offered a sympathetic ear when my cat went missing.
2. Aziz told me he'd crashed my car, but he was pulling my leg.
3. I was on my best behavior when I met my boyfriend's parents.
4. Pedro quit his job at the store, leaving me in the lurch.
5. Jean behaved out of character at the office party. She's normally so quiet!
6. Paulina poked fun at Mirek's new hairstyle.

10.6

GOOD BEHAVIOR:
generous to a fault
behaved beautifully
big hearted
lend a hand

BAD BEHAVIOR:
below the belt
treats them like dirt
let us down
unacceptable behavior

10.7

A 4 B 2 C 5 D 1 E 3

10.8

1. Henry can't control his **badly behaved** students.
2. I really **feel for** Mario. He has to work so hard in the kitchen.
3. My friends **ribbed me** for having such an old phone.
4. My dog **behaved beautifully** when I took him on the train.
5. Brad loves **playing practical jokes** on his brother.

11

11.4

1. I get **itchy feet** when I haven't been abroad for a long time.
2. Liz was **feeling blue** when her best friend left the country.
3. When Dylan copied her homework, Zoe was so angry that she was **foaming at the mouth**.
4. This terrible weather is **driving me nuts**.
5. My neighbor **saw red** when I parked in front of his house.

11.5

A 7 B 1 C 4 D 8 E 2 F 5 G 3 H 6

11.6

1. I was broken-hearted **when my girlfriend left me.**
2. I get itchy feet when I haven't **been abroad for a long time.**
3. Caitlin got cold feet **about singing karaoke.**
4. The children all went bananas **when I took them to the playground.**
5. My neighbor saw red **when I parked in front of his house.**

11.7

1. I **had egg on my face** after I called Jo's new boyfriend Ben. That was her ex-boyfriend's name!
2. After a long week at work, I **let my hair down** at my best friend's party.
3. Silvio went **as white as a sheet** when he got the bad news.
4. I was really upset when a customer shouted at me, but I managed to **keep a stiff upper lip**.
5. Leo **cried his eyes out** when I said he couldn't have another cookie.

12

12.5

1. The news that our profits were up was **music** to our ears.
2. Our new intern is such an **eager** beaver. She works really hard.
3. I was over the **moon** when I won the best actor award.
4. Salvador loves cooking. He puts his **heart** and soul into it.
5. I was on the edge of my **seat** as the detective revealed the murderer.

12.6

1. The kids **jumped for joy** when I brought our new puppy home.
2. Robbie has **flung himself into** training for the gymnastics competition.
3. My motorcycle is **my pride and joy**. I clean it every day.
4. Jamal **had butterflies in his stomach** as he waited for his date outside the restaurant.
5. Clara was **bright-eyed and bushy-tailed** as she set off on the hike.

12.7

1. The children were **bouncing off the walls** after a whole day indoors.
2. The news that our profits were up was **music to our ears**.
3. Jack was **on top of the world** when his team won the trophy.
4. I was **on the edge of my seat** as the detective revealed the murderer.
5. The sight of the park in spring is **a joy to behold**.

12.8

1. bursting with excitement
2. on cloud nine
3. head over heels
4. wept with joy
5. raring to go

13

13.5

1. Yannis was sad.
2. I was embarrassed.
3. I was sad.
4. I was afraid.
5. They were ashamed.

13.6

1 B 2 A 3 C 4 C 5 A

13.7

1. It makes my blood boil when people litter.
2. The sight of the old, spooky house made my hair stand on end.
3. Alice was shaking in her boots before she did her first bungee jump.
4. That horror movie sent shivers down my spine. It was so scary!

13.8

1. a downer
2. on the warpath
3. reduced to tears
4. that sinking feeling
5. wanted the earth to swallow her up
6. kicked myself

14

14.2

1. That boring lecture **went in one ear and out the other**!
2. I've seen that animal before, but **its name escapes me**.
3. Emi and Sofia **took a trip down memory lane** as they talked about their school days.
4. Jacob was explaining the diagram when he suddenly **lost his train of thought**.

14.3

1. You should keep in **mind** that it gets cold in the winter and pack some warm clothes.
2. The police showed me a photo of the suspect to jog my **memory**.

3 I enjoyed the party, but at the back of my **mind** I knew I had to catch the last train home.
4 Keeping busy at work is helping me erase the **memory** of my ex-girlfriend.

14.4

1 When the hotel receptionist asked me for my phone number, **my mind went blank**.
2 The answer to the teacher's question was **on the tip of my tongue**.
3 I'm sorry I didn't get you a present. **It slipped my mind** that it was your birthday.
4 I can't believe I forgot to bring the sandwiches! I've got **a memory like a sieve**.
5 **Memories are fading** of what the world was like before TV.

14.5

1 a photographic memory
2 memories came flooding back
3 racking my brain
4 rings a bell
5 erase the memory of
6 stirred up memories
7 in living memory
8 sprang to mind

15

15.2

1 burying his head in the sand
2 a bundle of nerves
3 getting on my nerves
4 Keep your chin up!
5 a shoulder to cry on
6 a pat on the back
7 has his heart set on

15.3

A 9 B 4 C 5 D 1 E 3 F 2 G 8 H 6 I 7

15.4

1 I hope the performance goes well, Adam. Break a leg!
2 Oh, no! I've forgotten my wallet. I'm such a scatterbrain!
3 Isla has such a sweet tooth. She loves eating cakes.
4 Wyatt is a good friend. He was a shoulder to cry on when I broke up with my girlfriend.

15.5

1 play it by ear
2 my heart sank
3 almost jumped out of his skin
4 has his heart set on
5 thick-skinned

15.6

1 Oh, no! I've forgotten my wallet. I'm such **a scatterbrain**!
2 When you're a parent, you need to **have eyes in the back of your head**!
3 Scarlett **got cold feet** about going on the rollercoaster.
4 There's nothing to do at work at the moment. I'm just sitting here **twiddling my thumbs**.
5 Maureen was **a bundle of nerves** before her wedding.

16

16.2

1 They were so angry with each other **that they almost came to blows!**
2 I decided to hold fire before **booking such an expensive holiday.**
3 The boss is in a terrible mood today! **We're all going to be in the line of fire.**
4 Poor you! **You've really been in the wars!**
5 I have some very bad news, **but please don't shoot the messenger!**

16.3

1 B 2 C 3 A 4 A 5 B

16.4

1 Balwant had to bite the **bullet** and tell his teacher that he hadn't done his homework.
2 Buying a house can be a **minefield**. There's always so much to think about!
3 I'm going to take my lunch break now. Could you hold down the **fort** until I get back?
4 Our daughter dropped a **bombshell** when she told us she and her new boyfriend were engaged.
5 Sonia stuck to her **guns** and told her daughter that she couldn't go to the party.

16.5

1 stabbed me in the back
2 an uphill battle
3 crossing swords
4 like a war zone
5 an ax to grind

17

17.3

1 a drop in the ocean
2 the middle of nowhere
3 everything but the kitchen sink
4 off the beaten path
5 in dribs and drabs
6 precious little

17.4

A 4 B 1 C 5 D 3 E 6 F 2

17.5

1 The guests began to arrive at the party **in dribs and drabs**.
2 My new apartment is **within walking distance** of my workplace.
3 We always take **everything but the kitchen sink** when we travel.
4 The castle is in **a far-flung corner** of the island. It takes hours to drive there.
5 Sharon lives in **the middle of nowhere**. You can't get there by train.

17.6

1 The Olympic swimming team has won tons of medals.
2 Carla's school is just a stone's throw away from the bus stop.
3 You don't need to drive to the store. It's just around the corner.
4 The forest stretched as far as the eye can see.

17.7

1 the middle of nowhere
2 far and wide
3 a thousand-and-one
4 few and far between
5 within walking distance
6 by a whisker
7 everything but the kitchen sink

18

18.4

1 My cake's going to be great. I'm just putting **the finishing** touches on it.
2 The pottery course was far too difficult for a **newbie** like me.
3 Mike's made a **fresh** start this year. He's eating much more healthily.
4 I've been marking tests all day, but the end is in **sight**!

18.5

1 beginning 2 ending 3 beginning
4 beginning 5 ending

18.6

1 Mia's fashion firm **got off to a flying start**. She has already won three awards.
2 It was **the end of an era** when our boss retired after 30 years.
3 After selling the last sandwich, Dean decided to **call it a day**.
4 Sophie's café finally **got off the ground** when she lowered her prices.
5 Trains across the city **ground to a halt** because of the snow.

18.7

1 a fitting end 2 call it a day 3 kicked off
4 get going 5 drew to a close

19

19.4

1. Rain is fairly likely.
2. Buster is likely to win.
3. It is very unlikely.
4. She is unlikely to pass.
5. It is almost certain.

19.5

1. I think Ruben's dreams of becoming a pop star are totally pie in the sky.
2. It looks like a medal is in the cards for Noriko after that amazing throw.
3. I'm afraid you're out of luck. The last train has just left the station.
4. We don't stand a chance of getting into the museum before lunchtime.
5. You're in luck! We have one dress left in your size.

19.6

1. It was just a case of **beginner's luck** when I won that card game. I'd never played it before.
2. There was only **a slim chance** that we'd see a cheetah, so we were amazed when we spotted one.
3. Russell has injured his knee. It's **touch-and-go** whether he'll be able to play in the tournament this month.
4. I hadn't studied for my tests, so it was **sheer luck** when I passed them.
5. I had an interview for a great job, but **blew it** when I arrived half an hour late.

19.7

1. on the off-chance
2. against all odds
3. a stroke of luck
4. Don't push your luck!
5. the hot favorite

20

20.3

A 3 B 5 C 4 D 1 E 2

20.4

1. There have been teething problems with the new computer system at work.
2. Unclogging my sink was a piece of cake for Carlita. She's a plumber.
3. Doing the dishes after a dinner party is a pain in the neck.
4. Getting around my city is a breeze. Our trains are excellent.
5. Finishing the building this month is going to be a tall order.

20.5

EASE:
smooth sailing
a breeze
like shooting fish in a barrel
with her eyes shut

DIFFICULTY:
easier said than done
out of his depth
a tall order
like getting blood from a stone

20.6

1. Don't **make a mountain out of a molehill**. I only asked you to help me bake a cake!
2. My home improvements **opened a can of worms**. The builders discovered so many problems.
3. The team has **a mountain to climb** if it wants to win the game.
4. I was **like a fish out of water** at the science fiction convention.
5. Doing the dishes after a dinner party is **a pain in the neck**.

21

21.3

1. Zahira is an excellent scuba teacher. You're **in safe hands** with her.
2. Hayley had **a close shave**. That ball almost hit her!
3. I advised Kathy not to go into the water. It would be **risking life and limb**.
4. The bear had left, and **the coast was clear**. We could continue with our trek.

21.4

1. safety 2. safety 3. danger 4. danger
5. safety 6. danger 7. safety 8. danger
9. danger

21.5

1. Maddy caught the train by the skin of her teeth. It left a few seconds later.
2. The rescue team found the climbers safe and sound after a week-long search.
3. You have to take your life in your hands every time you cross this road.
4. Make sure you wear a helmet when you're cycling! Remember, safety first!
5. The route through the jungle was fraught with danger.

21.6

1. in one piece
2. had a narrow escape
3. safety first
4. in safe hands
5. too close for comfort

22

22.3

1. a tough nut to crack
2. fighting a losing battle
3. rubbed salt into the wound
4. grin and bear it
5. thrown in at the deep end
6. pick up the pieces

22.4

B
D
E
G
I

22.5

1. Oh, no, I've missed the last bus home. I'm really in a **jam** now.
2. Working on the farm meant I had to come to **grips** with driving a tractor.
3. The peeling wallpaper was just the **tip** of the iceberg. The house needed so many repairs.
4. I hated working at the diner. The final **straw** was when they made me dress as a chicken.
5. The plumber got to the **bottom** of what's causing the leak. We need to replace the pipe.

22.6

1. Not being able to read music was **a stumbling block** when I started learning the saxophone.
2. The protesters want to stop the building being demolished, but they're **fighting a losing battle**.
3. If you let your children eat whatever they want for dinner, you're **making a rod for your own back**.
4. I hate going to the dentist, but I know I have to **grin and bear it**.
5. I can't believe you've upset your sister again! I'm the one who has to **pick up the pieces**.

22.7

1. a nightmare
2. a bumpy ride
3. in dire straits
4. a tough nut to crack
5. in a jam

23

23.4

1. What a scorcher! It's perfect weather for a barbecue.
2. We had to leave the beach because it started bucketing down.
3. Nina always takes her dog for a walk come rain or shine.

23.5

1. You weren't listening to me, were you? You had your head in the clouds.
2. This politician used to be really popular, but now the tide has turned.
3. Isaac and Fatima's argument about which movie to watch was just a storm in a teacup.
4. You don't need a coat, Phil! It's like an oven outside.
5. I'm so tired tonight! I'm going to hit the hay.
6. There are lots of cafés and restaurants in my neck of the woods.

23.6

1. a stick-in-the-mud
2. a ray of sunshine
3. take a rain check on
4. a breath of fresh air
5. a howling wind
6. like an oven
7. raining cats and dogs

23.7

A 2 B 5 C 4 D 1 E 7 F 8 G 3 H 6

24

24.3

1. I always enjoy a chitchat **with my sister over coffee.**
2. The students parroted the facts **without using their own words.**
3. Ahmed talks the talk, **but isn't very hardworking.**
4. I hate it when my boss **talks down to me!**
5. Leo can talk himself out **of any awkward situation.**
6. My colleagues love to talk shop **when they meet for lunch.**
7. This politician has a reputation **for speaking his mind.**
8. I made small talk with Marisha **while we waited for the train.**
9. I've tried telling Maya to clean up her room, **but it's like talking to a brick wall.**

24.4

1. talk shop
2. spins a good yarn
3. She can talk!
4. talk big
5. parroted
6. talks down to me
7. talks the talk

24.5

1. talk some sense into him
2. talk your ear off
3. a loudmouth
4. talks the talk

24.6

1. Nina keeps **droning on** about her new car. It's getting really boring!
2. This politician has a reputation for **speaking his mind**.
3. Sarah was born with **the gift of the gab**. She could sell you anything.
4. **Cat got your tongue?** You usually have so much to say.
5. I sat on the shore with my boyfriend, **shooting the breeze**.

25

25.4

A 5 B 7 C 1 D 6 E 4 F 2 G 8 H 3

25.5

1. We must have **got our wires crossed**. I thought the dress code for this party was casual.
2. When news stories are shocking, I always **take them with a grain of salt**.
3. The boss **stirred up a hornet's nest** when she said we would have to take a pay cut.
4. After leaving the band, Marco **dished the dirt** about the other band members to a journalist.
5. Anna's manager **touched base** with her for a quick update on her research.
6. The tour rep **broke the news** to us that our flight had been canceled.

25.6

1. I'm afraid your cat will have to stay here overnight, but I promise I'll keep you in the picture about how she's recovering.
2. Why did you spill the beans and tell Luke I had a new boyfriend? I wanted to tell him myself.
3. This restaurant couldn't afford an advertising campaign, but it has become really popular by word of mouth.
4. I'm planning a surprise trip to Paris with Liam to celebrate our wedding anniversary. Don't let the cat out of the bag!
5. Rumors that the two actors had secretly gotten married spread like wildfire.

25.7

1. the bearer of bad news
2. take them with a grain of salt
3. got our wires crossed
4. heard it through the grapevine
5. touched base

26

26.5

1. The children are being very quiet. I think there's something fishy going on!
2. Tania told me a secret but asked me to keep it under my hat.
3. My wife was angry when I went behind her back and bought myself a new motorcycle.
4. I promise I won't tell Lizzie you're going to propose to her. My lips are sealed.
5. I thought Bella's hat was ridiculous, but I told her a white lie and said I loved it.

26.6

TRUTH:
a whistleblower
came clean
above board
brutally honest

LIES:
bending the truth
telling half-truths
went behind her back
took us for a ride

26.7

A
C
D
G

26.8

Hi Sunita,
I have some exciting news for you, but please keep it **under** your hat because it's **top** secret at the moment. I've been promoted! I had a **hunch** that I would get the job because my interview went well. As I said, please don't tell anyone because my new boss still wants to keep it under **wraps**.
Love, Lindsay

26.9

1. I'm not going to tell you how much my house cost. It's **none of your business**!
2. **A whistleblower** has told the authorities about the dirty conditions in the kitchen at work.
3. I knew Frida hadn't been out sick. I **smelled a rat** when she came back to work with a suntan.
4. David **lied through his teeth** to his mom. He claimed the cat had broken her favorite vase.
5. My teacher was **brutally honest** with me and told me my essay was terrible.

27

27.3

1. Felipe **cast** a glance at his watch. The bus was already 10 minutes late.
2. Jenny, please tell me how the interview went. I'm all **ears**!
3. Bastian **kept** a close watch on his children as they played outside.
4. The examiner watched us like a **hawk**, making sure we didn't cheat.

5 Kezia looked furious when I told her I'd torn her dress. If **looks** could kill!
6 When my parents got **wind** of the fact that I'd had a house party, they were furious.
7 Omar lent a **sympathetic** ear when I broke up with my boyfriend.

27.4

A 3 B 1 C 9 D 4 E 2 F 8 G 6
H 5 I 7

27.5

1 If looks could kill!
2 hard of hearing
3 listening with half an ear
4 fell on deaf ears
5 cast an eye over
6 watched us like a hawk
7 lent a sympathetic ear
8 turned a blind eye

27.6

1 Be careful what you say about the boss. Remember, walls have ears!
2 We kept our eyes peeled, hoping we'd spot some rare birds.
3 Martina didn't hear the teacher's question. She was a million miles away.
4 The border guard gave my documents the once-over, then let me drive on.
5 The teacher turned a blind eye to his students' bad behavior.

27.7

1 music to my ears
2 an eagle eye
3 cast an eye over
4 fell on deaf ears
5 hard of hearing

28

28.2

1 face the music
2 changed your tune
3 jazz up
4 The show must go on!
5 fine-tune
6 get the show on the road
7 read him like a book

28.3

1 Antonio is great at flower arranging. He **has it down to an art**.
2 Juanita is so careful at work. She **does everything by the book**.
3 I'm going to **take a page out of your book** and clean my desk.
4 The police chief **put us in the picture** about the bank robbery.
5 How many times must I **drum it into your head**? Wipe your feet on the mat!

28.4

1 toot her own horn
2 music to my ears
3 drum up
4 made a scene
5 is like a broken record
6 face the music

28.5

1 Ian's desserts are amazing. He'll be **a tough act to follow** when he leaves.
2 Arjun felt **left out of the picture** when his roommates got a dog without telling him.
3 You've **changed your tune**! I thought you didn't like cats.
4 Nisha is helping me **fine-tune** my presentation for tomorrow morning.
5 Dennis broke his mom's laptop. He had to **face the music** and tell her.

29

29.3

1 We sat in front of the TV stuffing our faces with popcorn.
2 Nigel took a tray of piping hot cupcakes out of the oven.
3 Ethan took his new client out for a sit-down meal.
4 You shouldn't eat so many cookies! You'll spoil your appetite.
5 Aliyah whipped up an omelet for Caleb and his friends.
6 Mario celebrated his 70th birthday with a feast fit for a king.
7 I washed down my pizza with a glass of lemonade.
8 We complained to the waiter that our soup was stone cold.

29.4

1 C 2 B 3 C 4 B 5 C

29.5

1 Mario celebrated his 70th birthday with **a feast fit for a king**.
2 I was in a rush, so I **grabbed something to eat** from the fast food stand.
3 The sight of the cake in the café window **made my mouth water**.
4 Chris bought **a round of drinks** for the basketball team.
5 I'm so glad I ordered an extra-large pizza. **I could eat a horse!**

29.6

1 a square meal
2 eats like a bird
3 wolfed down
4 whipped up
5 spoil your appetite

30

30.3

1 I don't feel very well. I think I'm **coming down with something**.
2 Moving to the country has given Kira **a new lease on life**.
3 Ollie received **a clean bill of health** from his doctor.
4 The dancers in this show have to be **as fit as a fiddle**.

30.4

1 health 2 sickness 3 sickness 4 health
5 sickness 6 sickness 7 health 8 sickness
9 sickness

30.5

1 This music's far too loud! It has given me **a splitting headache**.
2 A week at a health spa was **just what the doctor ordered** after a stressful month at work.
3 Uma is **up and about** following her operation last week.
4 Imran looks **the picture of health** since he started going to the gym.
5 A relaxing afternoon in the park helped me **recharge my batteries**.

30.6

1 the worse for wear
2 throwing up
3 on the mend
4 in bad shape
5 flare up
6 a heavy cold
7 get in shape

31

31.4

1 Brad thought he would pass the test easily, **but he only scraped by.**
2 Our cutting-edge products **have made our company millions of dollars.**
3 The professor's astrophysics lecture **went over my head.**
4 Ian is such a bookworm. **He loves reading.**
5 Vineetha loves modern art. **She knows it inside out.**
6 Ping's design for the new library **really breaks the mold.**
7 These doctors have made **a breakthrough in their medical research.**

31.5

1 We both thought of buying Dan a camera for his birthday. **Great minds think alike!**
2 Dion's new laptop is **light-years ahead of** his old one.

3 Ben accused Stefan of being **a copycat**. Their artworks were very similar.
4 Mary's an expert in ancient history. She really **knows her stuff**.
5 The professor's astrophysics lecture **went over my head**.

31.6

1 Andrea only started work here last week. She's till learning the **ropes**.
2 I can show you around my city. I know it like the **back** of my hand.
3 My client wanted a completely new design. I had to put on my thinking **cap**.
4 I just can't make heads or **tails** of this map.
5 Peter's **brushing** up on his French before his vacation in Paris.

31.7

1 scraped by
2 state-of-the-art
3 a copycat
4 a bookworm
5 can't make heads or tails of
6 a breakthrough
7 passed with flying colors

32

32.2

1 I loved looking after Nadia's cat while she was on vacation. It was easy money.
2 Vegetables don't have to be expensive. Carrots and cabbage are dirt cheap at this store.
3 My daughter wants a new smartphone. I keep telling her money doesn't grow on trees!
4 It was really generous of Imran to buy us dinner at that expensive restaurant, but he does like to throw money around.

32.3

CHEAP:
dirt cheap
rock-bottom prices
cost next to nothing

EXPENSIVE:
a hefty sum
pricey
a rip-off

32.4

1 tighten his belt
2 saved for a rainy day
3 out of pocket
4 struck it rich
5 rolling in it

32.5

A 4 B 6 C 1 D 3 E 2 F 5

32.6

1 I found it hard to **make ends meet** when I was a student, so I started working in a café.
2 Aranza and Dominic decided to **go Dutch** at the end of the meal.
3 Luna wants to buy a house soon, so she's building up **a nest-egg**.
4 Marco had to **tighten his belt**, so he started bringing his own lunch to work.
5 Getting the car fixed will be expensive, but luckily I have **saved for a rainy day**.

33

33.2

CHEAP:
a good deal
bargain-basement prices
slash prices

EXPENSIVE:
highway robbery
cost an arm and a leg
pay over the odds

33.3

A 9 B 4 C 3 D 7 E 1 F 5 G 6 H 2 I 8

33.4

1 He looks for cheap things.
2 The jacket was cheap.
3 They reduce prices a lot.
4 Ayesha doesn't buy anything.
5 They bought lots of things.

33.5

1 My new suit cost an arm and a leg. I bought it from a tailor in Milan.
2 After winning the lottery, Tomás went on a shopping spree.
3 The taxi from the airport cost more than $70. It was highway robbery!
4 Austin needed some retail therapy, so he spent the afternoon at the mall.
5 This store sells designer labels at bargain-basement prices.
6 Javier drove a hard bargain, refusing to drop the price of his house.

33.6

1 splurge
2 shop around
3 pay over the odds
4 slash prices
5 cost a fortune

34

34.3

1 get a move on
2 from dusk till dawn
3 once in a blue moon
4 before we knew it
5 at the crack of dawn

34.4

B
D
E
G
H

34.5

1 Time's **up**! I need you to give me an answer now.
2 The teacher told Cory to stop **wasting** time on his phone.
3 I was woken in the **dead** of night by a loud noise outside.
4 We were up at the **crack** of dawn to catch our flight.
5 That meeting really **dragged** on. Colm was almost asleep by the end.

34.6

1 before we knew it
2 the wee hours
3 Time's up!
4 a drag
5 in the nick of time
6 flown by

34.7

1 Júlio **took his time** finishing his painting. He wanted it to be perfect.
2 Victoria is always **on time** for her English class.
3 Ren arrived **bright and early** for his first day at work.
4 It's nearly midnight. It's **about time** we went home.
5 Huan only cooks at home **once in a blue moon**.

35

35.2

1 We need to roll up our sleeves **if we're going to finish painting the house today.**
2 If Gavin doesn't start working harder, **we'll have to give him the boot.**
3 Austin is in a lot of trouble. **I wouldn't want to be in his shoes.**
4 My boss got very hot under the collar **when I handed my report in late.**
5 The movie was a spy thriller **with lots of cloak-and-dagger action.**
6 If Sven wins the race, **I'll eat my hat!**

7 My daughter thinks my taste **in music is really old hat.**
8 Jane has a bee in her bonnet **about people dropping litter on the sidewalk**.

35.3

1 Pedro's upset about failing the test. You'll have to **handle him with kid gloves**.
2 Ian's become **too big for his boots** since his promotion. He always ignores me.
3 When Juan won the national art prize, it was **a feather in his cap**.
4 My teacher explained that I would fail my exam if I didn't **pull my socks up**.

35.4

1 This steak really is **as tough as shoe leather**. I need a sharper knife!
2 My cousin is very emotional. He'll start an argument **at the drop of a hat**.
3 Carter is such **a clever clogs**. He's always the first to raise his hand in class.
4 After working at the bank for 30 years, it was time for me to **hang up my boots**.
5 We need to **roll up our sleeves** if we're going to finish painting the house today.

35.5

1 give him the boot
2 up my sleeve
3 in his shoes
4 roll up our sleeves
5 hang up my boots
6 off-the-cuff
7 lining her pockets
8 old hat

36

36.4

1 B 2 A 3 B 4 C 5 A

36.5

1 She's working hard.
2 We rested.
3 Julie tried her best.
4 Carmen is not working hard.
5 It was hard work.

36.6

1 Leo always goes the extra mile to keep our customers happy.
2 Akash usually takes 40 winks after he's finished his lunch.
3 I'm sorry, I can't talk to you for long. I have my hands full.
4 Celia had to put her head down and finish her essay to meet the deadline.
5 Brandon is a slacker. He looks at his phone all day and ignores the customers.
6 After a long day working at the store, Marc likes to put his feet up and watch TV.

36.7

1 pulled out all the stops
2 roll up our sleeves
3 snowed under
4 elbow grease
5 didn't lift a finger

37

37.2

1 The client hates my design for the company logo, so **it's back to the drawing board**.
2 The traffic usually moves **at a snail's pace** during the rush hour.
3 The guests **made a beeline for** all the cakes on the table.
4 Scientists are **on the verge of** developing intelligent robots.

37.3

A 3 B 5 C 1 D 2 E 4

37.4

1 begin a trip or a drive
2 open and working well
3 back to the beginning
4 not making any progress
5 made a lot of progess

37.5

1 The hikers **forged ahead** in spite of the terrible snowstorm.
2 I'm **running around like a headless chicken** trying to get the meal ready for my guests tonight.
3 **Slowly but surely**, my daughter is learning to ride a bike.
4 I was late for my business meeting, so I had to eat lunch **on the run**.
5 The children threw the ball **back and forth** as they played outside.

38

38.3

1 a slap on the wrist
2 broke the law
3 twisted her arm
4 reached a verdict
5 calls the shots

38.4

1 It was the day of reckoning. The judge was about to sentence Mason for burglary.
2 It's important to obey the law when you're cycling in the city.
3 It's the children who rule the roost in Kaylee's family. They don't respect her.
4 Ben suffered the consequences of his misbehavior and had to wash the car.
5 Seth took the law into his own hands and confronted the vandals.

38.5

1 Carla refused to **toe the line** and wear the same uniform as the other students.
2 Jack's boss is always **breathing down his neck**. He wants more independence.
3 The party **got out of hand**, so the neighbors called the police.
4 Since leaving jail, Crystal has **kept on the straight and narrow**.
5 Pedro's father **put his foot down** and refused to let him watch TV.

38.6

1 let him off the hook
2 reached a verdict
3 twisted her arm
4 the head
5 calls the shots
6 a slap on the wrist

39

39.3

SUCCESS:
hit the big time
worked like a charm
brought the house down

FAILURE:
on the ropes
go sideways
screwed up

39.4

1 The gang's plan to rob the bank **went belly up** when a policeman recognized Mike.
2 Nicola's decision to take her dog shopping turned out to be **a recipe for disaster**.
3 Nathan's first book was **an overnight success**. It sold a million copies in a month.
4 Lucy's beauty salon is **going from strength to strength**. She's opening another soon.
5 Margaret's performance **fell flat on its face**. She can't sing!

39.5

1 success 2 failure 3 failure 4 success
5 failure 6 success 7 success 8 success
9 failure

39.6

1 won it hands down
2 go sideways
3 an overnight success
4 brought the house down
5 fell flat on its face
6 going from strength to strength

7 a recipe for disaster
8 hit the jackpot
9 screwed up

40

40.3

1 Andrew made sure he **had his ducks in a row** before his presentation.
2 Maya is a great designer. She always **thinks outside the box**.
3 Irena's internship at the fashion firm helped her to get **a foot in the door**.
4 We're **working around the clock** to make sure the new subway line opens on time.

40.4

A 5 B 3 C 7 D 6 E 1 F 4 G 8 H 2

40.5

1 Carlos has lots of **hands-on** experience working with horses.
2 Sara has handed in her **notice** at work. She's going to study engineering.
3 After studying for many years, Anna embarked on a **career** as a surgeon.
4 I'm really bored at work, so I've decided to start job **hunting**.
5 Rory goes the extra **mile** to make sure his customers are satisfied.

40.6

1 landed a job
2 in a nutshell
3 tied up
4 goes the extra mile
5 fired

41

41.5

1 I've decided to leave the rat race **and move to the country.**
2 My dad had a blue-collar job **in the construction industry.**
3 We decided to blacklist this supplier **after they sent us faulty products.**
4 After many years in journalism, **Simon became a big cheese in the media.**
5 There's a lot of red tape involved **in health and safety in the warehouse.**

41.6

1 We ask all our interview candidates the same questions to create **a level playing field**.
2 Our range of cereal is **a cash cow**. It's cheap to make and customers love it.
3 I have **a white-collar job** in an investment bank.
4 Our new bags are **selling like hotcakes**. We need to order more.
5 Evan is always asking me what to do. I feel like I have to **spoon-feed** him.

41.7

1 We ask all our interview candidates the same questions to create **a level playing field**.
2 Emily is **a team player**. She works so well with all her colleagues at the bookstore.
3 Our boss is leaving the restaurant soon, and Angela is **the front-runner** to get his job.
4 We've already reduced our price by 25 percent. **The ball is in your court.**
5 I play in a band every weekend, but teaching guitar is **my bread and butter**.
6 Boris was given **a golden handshake** when he retired from the company.

41.8

1 in the red
2 bring home the bacon
3 the lion's share
4 the top dog
5 a white-collar job

42

42.2

1 All our gardeners are really hardworking, but Hannah is in a league of her own.
2 This client keeps moving the goalposts. Now she wants the bedroom painted red.
3 We don't have enough time to train our employees properly. They'll just have to sink or swim.
4 We've got a lot of unpacking to do, so let's get the ball rolling.
5 I often have to work evenings, but I knew the score when I decided to accept this job.

42.3

1 cleared a hurdle
2 in full swing
3 a ballpark figure
4 par for the course
5 below par
6 on the ball
7 get the ball rolling

42.4

1 the gloves are off
2 at this stage of the game
3 thrown in at the deep end
4 saved by the bell
5 threw us a curveball

42.5

1 The firefighters **tackled** the fire at the warehouse and made sure everyone got out safely.
2 I've had cats and rabbits before, but looking after a dog is **a whole new ball game**.
3 The plumber gave us **a ballpark figure** for the cost of the new bathroom.
4 I'm sorry you didn't get through to the next round, Cameron. **You win some, you lose some!**
5 I've failed my driving test for the tenth time. I think it's time to **throw in the towel**.

43

43.3

1 Doug is **making** progress on his new novel and hopes to finish it soon.
2 I want to get fit, so I've started **doing** exercise every day.
3 **Do** your best in the game today! I know you can beat the other team.
4 There's something wrong with the photocopier. It's **making** a strange noise.
5 I always **do** my homework as soon as I get home from school.
6 The children had fun painting, but they've really **made** a mess.
7 Can you **do** me a favor and get that book down from the shelf?

43.4

1 Zoe did her hair before her best friend's engagement party.
2 I made a phone call to our client in India to discuss some important business.
3 I was quite offended when Laura made a joke about my new sweater.
4 The flood did a lot of damage to our house, so we had to move out.
5 We did an experiment in the laboratory as part of our research project.

43.5

A 5 B 8 C 1 D 4 E 7 F 3 G 6 H 2

43.6

1 I **made** some friends from the local area while I was on vacation.
2 I always **do** my homework as soon as I get home from school.
3 We're **making** arrangements for our summer vacation in Italy.
4 I was really pleased when Sue **made** a cake for my birthday.
5 We **did** an experiment in the laboratory as part of our research project.
6 I was quite offended when Laura **made** a joke about my new sweater.
7 The flood **did** a lot of damage to our house, so we had to move out.
8 I want to get fit, so I've started **doing** exercise every day.
9 My daughter always **makes** her bed in the morning.
10 Can you **do** me a favor and get that book down from the shelf?

44

44.3

GIVE:
a presentation
an example
the impression
birth
a speech
priority
me a hug
an answer

TAKE:
a photo
a chance
a nap
a bite
a shower
a seat
the lead
a look

44.4

1. Dwayne likes to take a shower as soon as he gets home from work.
2. Emily is giving a presentation about the company's sales figures.
3. Hamid took a photo of his class in front of the Colosseum.
4. Near the end of the race, Axel passed the other athletes and took the lead.

44.5

1. I had a big suitcase, so Selma offered **to give me a lift to the airport.**
2. The dog gave the impression **that he wanted to go out for a walk.**
3. Mario and I are taking **a drawing class this evening.**
4. The receptionist asked me to take **a seat while I waited for the hairdresser.**
5. Drivers should always give **priority to pedestrians.**

44.6

A 3 B 1 C 4 D 2 E 6 F 5 G 7

44.7

1. When Danny got to the hotel, he **gave** me a call to say he had arrived safely.
2. Hamid **took** a photo of his class in front of the Colosseum.
3. The professor **gave** a speech to the students about her new discovery.
4. Emily is **giving** a presentation about the company's sales figures.
5. Dwayne likes to **take** a shower as soon as he gets home from work.

45

45.3

1. After gardening all morning, we were so tired that we needed to have a rest.
2. I need to go to bed now. I'm getting tired.
3. Shreya's going to have a baby this summer.
4. Michael and Heather had an argument about the rules of the game.
5. Lily had a conversation with another passenger on the train.

45.4

A 3 B 4 C 1 D 2 E 8 F 5 G 7 H 6

45.5

1. Robin always **gets angry** when his children refuse to eat their food.
2. I **have an appointment** to see the vet at 2 o'clock this afternoon.
3. Sean and Lisa **had a talk** about the new design for the office.
4. Tiffany **had fun** at the festival with her friends.

45.6

1. Kylie **had a party** to celebrate her 18th birthday. It was great fun!
2. Claude is **getting better** at making cakes.
3. I need to go to bed now. I'm **getting tired.**
4. After gardening all morning, we were so tired that we needed to **have a rest.**
5. You really need to **get going** if you want to catch the train.

46

46.3

A 3 B 1 C 5 D 2 E 4

46.4

1. Catalina has set the date for her wedding next summer.
2. After telling my boss I was leaving my job, I put it in writing.
3. I set homework for my students at the end of every lesson.
4. I had a long way to drive, so I set off nice and early.

46.5

1. put her cards on the table
2. put off
3. put a stop to
4. put me in charge of
5. put it bluntly

46.6

1. I really **put** my foot in it when I asked if Hazel was Tamsin's mother. They are actually sisters.
2. Judy was sad to see the birds trapped in their cage, so she **set** them free.
3. The ship **set** sail for China this morning. It will arrive in 20 days.
4. Terry **puts** his family first. He always leaves work in time to meet his children after school.
5. Sakura has been **putting** the heat on the contractors to finish the job quickly.

46.7

1. Silvio called the fire department **after he accidentally set fire to his shed.**
2. After telling my boss I was leaving my job, **I put it in writing.**
3. I had a long way to drive, **so I set off nice and early.**
4. I always put off doing my homework **until the last minute.**
5. Ed set the table **before his guests arrived for dinner.**
5. Irfan has put me in charge of **the store while he is on vacation.**

47

47.3

GO:
bankrupt
quiet
abroad
fishing
deaf
crazy
missing
bad

COME:
to a standstill
close
to a decision
into view
to an agreement
in last
prepared
to the rescue

47.4

1. Riya came prepared for the camping trip.
2. When the play came to an end, everyone left the theater.
3. My kids go crazy whenever they hear that song.
4. That style of shirt went out of fashion years ago!

47.5

A 4 B 1 C 3 D 2 E 6 F 5

47.6

1. This fruit has **gone** bad. It's not good to eat.
2. My aunt's **going** deaf. You'll have to speak more loudly.
3. The judges have **come** to a decision about the winner.

4 Sara's fashion boutique **went** bankrupt. She couldn't afford the rent.
5 Everyone **went** quiet when the boss walked into the room.
6 My move **went** smoothly. I had lots of people helping me.
7 The team has **come** to an agreement about which logo design to use.

47.7

1 Joshua's dog has **gone missing**. He's putting up signs around town.
2 We were stranded on the rocks until the lifeguards **came to the rescue**.
3 Dougie prefers to **go abroad** on vacation.
4 Pavel likes to **go fishing** on Saturdays.
5 Paula trained very hard and **came in first** in the hurdles.

48

48.5

1 Two firefighters **paid** a visit to my son's school today to talk about fire safety.
2 I'm trying to call the bank and they've asked me to **hold** the line. It's so annoying!
3 Cleo told me about her mom's surprise party but asked me to **keep** it a secret.
4 We **hold** a meeting each Monday to discuss the week ahead.

48.6

1 catch his eye
2 caught the train
3 caught a cold
4 catch my breath
5 catch fire

48.7

1 B 2 B 3 C 4 A

48.8

1 The teacher asked the students **to keep quiet during the test.**
2 The children paid close attention to John **as he told them about his travels.**
3 I live with my parents, but **pay my way by buying groceries.**
4 Natalie always keeps calm **when she has to talk to angry customers.**
5 After climbing the stairs, **I stopped to catch my breath.**
6 Pari usually drives to work, **but she caught the train this morning.**
7 Raul caught a glimpse of **a deer as he hiked through the forest.**
8 Kelly paid me a compliment **and said she liked my new haircut.**

48.9

1 pay you back
2 paid tribute
3 hold my tongue
4 hold the line
5 paid me a compliment
6 holds a grudge
7 paid close attention

49

49.7

1 André gets up **ridiculously early** every morning.
2 This food is **absolutely delicious**. You're such a good cook!
3 We **strongly advise** you not to travel unless it is absolutely necessary.
4 That date was **unbelievably awkward**. We had nothing to say to each other.
5 Gina was **deeply concerned** when her cat didn't come home for his dinner.

49.8

1 Cesar's new movie was **highly praised by the critics.**
2 The park is absolutely beautiful **at this time of year.**
3 I was deeply hurt when Madison **didn't invite me to her wedding.**
4 The portions in this restaurant **are ridiculously small.**
5 Malachi strongly believes in **looking after the environment.**

49.9

ABSOLUTELY:
delicious
useless
fantastic

HIGHLY:
unlikely
probable
praised

RIDICULOUSLY:
easy
expensive
early

STRONGLY:
believes
feels
advise

49.10

1 I was **unbelievably** lucky to get my violin back after I left it on the train.
2 Gina was **deeply** concerned when her cat didn't come home for his dinner.
3 I **highly** recommend this book. I stayed up all night reading it!
4 Some people can be **unbelievably** selfish when they are on the bus.
5 Malachi **strongly** believes in looking after the environment.

50

50.4

1 I don't need help carrying my bag. It's as light as a **feather**.
2 My uncle is as strong as an **ox**. He's a champion weightlifter.
3 My grandfather is as **wise** as an owl. He always gives good advice.
4 I'm as blind as a **bat** without my glasses.
5 Paul is as quiet as a **mouse**. He never talks in meetings.

50.5

1 There was no rain for months, and the land was **as dry as a bone**.
2 Fiona looked **as proud as a peacock** in her new hat.
3 Mary's car is **as old as the hills.** She refuses to buy a new one.
4 Selma **slept like a log** after a long day climbing in the Alps.

50.6

1 as good as gold
2 as deaf as a post
3 shaking like a leaf
4 as white as a sheet
5 as fast as lightning
6 as brave as a lion

50.7

A
C
E
G
H

50.8

1 Have you been out in the snow? Your hands are **as cold as ice**!
2 Mary's car is **as old as the hills**. She refuses to buy a new one.
3 Javier was **as busy as a bee** getting ready for the party.
4 Roy's new suit **fits like a glove**. He looks really good.
5 My grandmother is **as deaf as a post**. She always turns up the TV really loud.

51

51.2

1. Honesty is the best policy.
2. Many hands make light work.
3. There's no time like the present.
4. Two heads are better than one.
5. Curiosity killed the cat.
6. Better late than never.
7. Actions speak louder than words.

51.3

A 2 B 5 C 4 D 9 E 7 F 1 G 8 H 3 I 6

51.4

1. **Don't count your chickens before they hatch**, Kim! The game isn't over yet.
2. Stop sitting by the phone waiting to hear if you got the job. **A watched pot never boils.**
3. I've been playing the trumpet every day and I'm really improving. **Practice makes perfect.**
4. Azra adores her pet snake. I suppose **beauty is in the eye of the beholder**.

51.5

1. Flo's incompetence at work is affecting the whole team. A chain is only as strong as its weakest link.
2. We're almost ready for the party and we've still got plenty of time. Many hands make light work.
3. The day the sales began, Tamsin was outside the store at 6 in the morning. The early bird catches the worm!
4. Jakob really misses his girlfriend now that she has gone to college. Absence makes the heart grow fonder.
5. You were meant to give me this assignment a week ago, but better late than never.

51.6

1. Better late than never.
2. Honesty is the best policy.
3. Curiosity killed the cat.
4. Actions speak louder than words.

52

52.8

1. Yes, I will **lend** you my laptop, but please be careful with it.
2. I **expect** that there will be lots of people at the party.
3. I **hope** I still get into college.
4. Suddenly, Jules **heard** a loud bang coming from behind him.
5. This pie that you've been baking **smells** delicious!

52.9

1. Jules often **listens to** music on his walk home from work.
2. Come outside and **look at** the flowers I planted last month.
3. The Lions have **won** the soccer championship again.
4. The Lions **beat** the Stars 3–1.
5. I **saw** Keiko's large ginger cat lying on the lawn.

52.10

1. The cat watched the birds **sitting in a tree.**
2. I wish my **test results were better.**
3. This pie that you've been baking **smells delicious!**
4. Suddenly, Jules heard a loud bang **coming from behind him.**
5. I expect that there will be **lots of people at the party.**
6. Come outside and look at **the flowers I planted last month.**
7. The Lions have won **the soccer championship again.**
8. I'm really looking forward to **seeing the fireworks display at the party.**
9. Jules often listens to **music on his walk home from work.**

52.11

A 6 B 3 C 1 D 8 E 5 F 7 G 4 H 2

53

53.8

1. "Oh, no," said Kayleigh. "I've left my school bag on the bus with all my homework in it."
2. Colm injured his foot when he dropped the vase.
3. There is lots of work to do. I have to stack shelves and serve customers.
4. Are you sure you want to buy that car? It would be more sensible to save your money.

53.9

1. Colm's foot still hurt for days after the accident.
2. Wait a minute! I need to charge my phone before we go.
3. Silvia reminded Sanjay to visit his mother on her birthday.
4. I have a job as a sales assistant in a supermarket.

53.10

A 4 B 2 C 7 D 3 E 8 F 6 G 1 H 5

53.11

1. There's no need to be so **sensitive!** I was only trying to give you advice.
2. Kayleigh had to **tell** her teacher that she had left her homework on the bus.
3. Colm **damaged** Sheila's vase when he dropped it.
4. Sanjay **remembered** to see his mother, who was delighted to see him.
5. Nina **wore** her new dress to Jack's party.
6. Don't forget to bring water. I'll **fill up** some bottles for us.

54

54.2

1. a red-letter day
2. pitch black
3. the green belt
4. a black eye
5. turned beet-red
6. a black-tie event
7. a green thumb

54.3

Hi Sandra,
Alyssa knocked on my door out of the **blue** yesterday. I hadn't seen her for years! She said she was going to paint the town **red** for her birthday next week, and invited me along, too. You know I only go out once in a **blue** moon, so I thought it would be a **golden** opportunity to meet some new friends. She said I could bring a friend along. Would you like to come with me?
Love,
Janice

54.4

1. Sergio got **a black eye** after he walked into a lamppost.
2. The actress made her first appearance **on the silver screen** in the 1950s.
3. I always **get the blues** when my vacation is over and I have to go back to work.
4. The boys were **caught red-handed** when they tried to break into the house.

54.5

1. I thought my new boss was really nice, but he showed his true colors when I forgot to put sugar in his coffee.
2. Fake designer goods are sold on the black market.
3. There's a gray area in the office dress code. My boss said it was casual, but she told me I couldn't wear shorts.
4. I want to be a teacher, so getting work experience at the school was a golden opportunity for me.
5. We're protesting against plans to build houses on the green belt in our local area.

54.6

1. black and blue
2. saw red
3. a green thumb
4. green with envy
5. out of the blue

Index of idioms and expressions

Numbers refer to the module number.

take **40** winks 36.2

A

about time 34.2
up and **about** 30.2
above board 26.1
go **abroad** 47.1
absence makes the heart grow fonder 51.1
absolutely 49.1
an **acquired** taste 29.2
act your age 1.2
a tough **act** to follow 5.1, 28.1
get your **act** together 37.1
read someone the riot **act** 9.2
actions speak louder than words 51.1
against all odds 19.3
come up **against** a brick wall 22.1
act your **age** 1.2
come of **age** 1.2
feel your **age** 1.2
great **age** 1.2
improve with **age** 1.2
ripe old **age** 1.2
tender **age** 1.2
that awkward **age** 1.2
ages 34.1
agree to disagree 9.2
come to an **agreement** 47.2
forge **ahead** 37.1
light-years **ahead** of 31.3
miles **ahead** of 5.1
a breath of fresh **air** 23.2
set an **alarm** 46.1
great minds think **alike** 31.1
against **all** odds 19.3
all good things come to those who wait 51.1
all good things must come to an end 18.3
all skin and bones 3.1
all too easy 20.1
I'm **all** ears 27.2
not **all** that it's cracked up to be 6.1
almost die of shame 13.4
almost jump out of your skin 15.1
get **angry** 45.2
give an **answer** 44.1
anyone's guess 19.3
drift **apart** 2.1
keep up **appearances** 3.1
spoil your **appetite** 29.2
the **apple** of someone's eye 8.1
have an **appointment** 45.1
a gray **area** 54.1
have an **argument** 45.1
cost an **arm** and a leg 33.1
twist someone's **arm** 38.2
up in **arms** 11.1
go **around** in circles 37.1
just **around** the corner 17.2
shop **around** 33.1
work **around** the clock 40.2
make **arrangements** 43.1
have something down to an **art** 28.1
state-of-the-**art** 31.3
as blind as a bat 50.2
as bold as brass 4.1
as brave as a lion 50.2
as busy as a bee 50.2
as cold as ice 50.1
as deaf as a post 50.1
as dry as a bone 50.1
as far as the eye can see 17.2
as fast as lightning 50.1
as fit as a fiddle 30.2
as flat as a pancake 8.1
as good as gold 50.1
as light as a feather 50.1
as old as the hills 1.1, 50.1
as proud as a peacock 50.2
as quiet as a mouse 50.2
as right as rain 30.2
as strong as an ox 50.2
as tough as shoe leather (US) / as tough as an old boot (UK) 35.1
as weak as a kitten 50.2
as white as a sheet 11.2, 50.1
as wise as an owl 50.2
at a snail's pace 37.1
at each other's throats 11.1
at odds 9.2
at the back of your mind 14.1
at the crack of dawn 34.2
at the drop of a hat 35.1
at this stage of the game 42.1
pay close **attention** 48.1
an **average** Joe 4.1
a million miles **away** 27.2
talk yourself out of any **awkward** situation 24.1
that **awkward** age 1.2
unbelievably **awkward** 49.4
an **ax** to grind 16.1

B

have a **baby** 45.1
a pat on the **back** 15.1
at the **back** of your mind 14.1
back and forth 37.1
back on track 37.1
back to square one 37.1
go behind someone's **back** 26.3
have eyes in the **back** of your head 15.1
it's **back** to the drawing board 37.1
know something like the **back** of your hand 31.1
make a rod for your own **back** 22.2
pay someone **back** 48.1
stab someone in the **back** 16.1
water off a duck's **back** 7.1
bring home the **bacon** 41.3
a **bad** workman always blames his tools 51.1
go **bad** (US) / go off (UK) 47.1
in **bad** shape 30.2
leave a **bad** taste in someone's mouth 6.1
the bearer of **bad** news 25.2
badger someone 7.1
badly behaved 10.4
let the cat out of the **bag** 25.2
a whole new **ball** game 42.1
get the **ball** rolling 18.1, 42.1
on the **ball** 42.1
the **ball** is in your court 41.2
a **ballpark** figure 42.1
go **bananas** 11.3
go **bankrupt** 47.1
bargain-basement prices 33.1
drive a hard **bargain** 33.1
go **bargain**-hunting 33.1
bark up the wrong tree 7.1
someone's **bark** is worse than their bite 4.2
a **barrel** of laughs 4.1
like shooting fish in a **barrel** 20.1
lock, stock, and **barrel** 17.1
touch **base** 25.1
bargain-**basement** prices 33.1
as blind as a **bat** 50.2
with **bated** breath 12.3
recharge your **batteries** 30.2
an uphill **battle** 16.1
fight a losing **battle** 22.2
full of **beans** 11.3
spill the **beans** 25.3
bear a striking resemblance 3.1
bear in mind (UK), *see* keep in mind (US)
grin and **bear** it 22.2
the **bearer** of bad news 25.2
beat a dead horse (US) / flog a dead horse (UK) 39.2
beat around the bush 23.3
off the **beaten** path (US) / off the beaten track (UK) 17.2
behave **beautifully** 10.4

beauty is in the eye of the beholder 51.1
an eager **beaver** 12.3
make your **bed** 43.1
as busy as a **bee** 50.2
have a **bee** in your bonnet 35.1
the **bee**'s knees 5.1
make a **beeline** for 37.1
turn **beet**-red 54.1
before you know it 34.2
beginner's luck 19.2
behave beautifully 10.4
behave out of character 10.4
badly **behaved** 10.4
well **behaved** 10.4
on your best **behavior** 10.4
unacceptable **behavior** 10.4
go **behind** someone's back 26.3
a joy to **behold** 12.2
beauty is in the eye of the **beholder** 51.1
ring a **bell** 14.1
saved by the **bell** 42.1
go **belly** up 39.2
below par 42.1
below the belt 10.1
below the **belt** 10.1
the green **belt** 54.1
tighten your **belt** 32.1
bend the rules 38.1
bend the truth 26.3
do your **best** 43.2
give something your **best** shot 36.1
honesty is the **best** policy 51.1
on your **best** behavior 10.4
the **best** of both worlds 5.1
the **best** thing since sliced bread 5.1
better late than never 51.1
better safe than sorry 21.2
get **better** 45.2
have seen **better** days 6.1
two heads are **better** than one 51.1
caught **between** a rock and a hard place 22.2
a **big** cheese 41.3
big hearted 10.1
hit the **big** time 39.1
talk **big** 24.1
too **big** for your boots 35.1
a clean **bill** of health 30.2
a **bird**'s-eye view 7.1
a little **bird** told me 25.2
eat like a **bird** 29.2
the early **bird** catches the worm 51.1
give **birth** 44.1
take the biscuit (UK), *see* take the cake (US)
in a **bit** of a tight spot 22.1
bite off more than you can chew 8.1
bite the bullet 16.1
someone's bark is worse than their **bite** 4.2
take a **bite** 44.2
a **black** eye 54.1
a **black**-tie event 54.1
black and blue 54.1
pitch **black** 54.1
the **black** market 54.1
the **black** sheep of the family 2.2
blacklist 41.1
a bad workman always **blames** his tools 51.1
someone's mind goes **blank** 14.1
blaze a trail 37.1
a **blessing** in disguise 5.1
as **blind** as a bat 50.2
turn a **blind** eye 27.1
in the **blink** of an eye 15.1
a chip off the old **block** 2.2
a stumbling **block** 22.1
have blue **blood** 3.3
like getting **blood** from a stone (UK) / like getting blood from a turnip (US) 20.2
make someone's **blood** boil 13.1
someone's **blood** runs cold 13.3
blow it 19.3
blow your own trumpet (UK), *see* toot your own horn (US)
mind-**blowing** 5.1
come to **blows** 16.1
a **blue**-collar job 41.1
black and **blue** 54.1
feel **blue** 11.2
have **blue** blood 3.3
once in a **blue** moon 34.1, 54.1
out of the **blue** 54.1
get the **blues** 54.1
put it **bluntly** 46.2
above **board** 26.1
it's back to the drawing **board** 37.1
make someone's blood **boil** 13.1
a watched pot never **boils** 51.1
as **bold** as brass 4.1
the nuts and **bolts** 25.2
drop a **bombshell** 16.1
a **bone** of contention 9.2
as dry as a **bone** 50.1
all skin and **bones** 3.1
have a bee in your **bonnet** 35.1
wouldn't say **boo** to a goose 4.2
do everything by the **book** 28.1
read someone like a **book** 28.1
take a page out of your **book** (US) / take a leaf out of your book (UK) 28.1
you can't judge a **book** by its cover 51.1
a **bookworm** 31.3
as tough as an old boot (UK), *see* as tough as shoe leather (US)
give someone the **boot** 35.1
hang up your **boots** 35.1
shake in your **boots** 13.3
too big for your **boots** 35.1
be **born** with a silver spoon in your mouth 3.3
the best of **both** worlds 5.1
get to the **bottom** of 22.2
rock-**bottom** prices 32.1
bouncing off the walls 12.3
think outside the **box** 40.2
pick someone's **brain** 15.1
rack your **brain** (US) / rack your brains (UK) 14.1
hold out an olive **branch** 9.2
as bold as **brass** 4.1
as **brave** as a lion 50.2
bread and butter 41.3
know what side your **bread** is buttered on 8.1
the best thing since sliced **bread** 5.1
a hair's **breadth** 17.2
break a leg! 15.1
break the law 38.1
break the mold 31.3
break the news 25.2
a hearty **breakfast** 29.1
a **breakthrough** 31.3
a **breath** of fresh air 23.2
catch your **breath** 48.3
not hold your **breath** 19.3
with bated **breath** 12.3
breathe down someone's neck 38.2
take a **breather** 36.2
a **breeze** 20.1
shoot the **breeze** 24.2
come up against a **brick** wall 22.1
like talking to a **brick** wall 24.1
bridge the generation gap 1.1
bright and early 34.2
bright-eyed and bushy-tailed 12.3
bright young things 1.1
bring home the bacon 41.3
bring the house down 39.2
bring up 2.2
teeter on the **brink** 21.2
be like a **broken** record 28.1
broken-hearted 11.2
brush up on 31.1
brutally honest 26.1
bucket down (UK) / rain buckets (US) 23.1
be on a tight **budget** 33.1
bite the **bullet** 16.1
dodge a **bullet** 16.1
a **bumpy** ride 22.2
a **bundle** of nerves 15.1
burn the candle at both ends 36.1
bursting with excitement 12.3
bury the hatchet 9.2
bury your head in the sand 15.1
beat around the **bush** 23.3
bright-eyed and **bushy**-tailed 12.3
business as usual 40.1
none of someone's **business** 26.1
as **busy** as a bee 50.2

bread and **butter** 41.3
butter someone up 8.1
look like **butter** wouldn't melt in your mouth 3.1
know what side your bread is **buttered** on 8.1
a **butterfingers** 8.1
have **butterflies** in your stomach 12.3
a social **butterfly** 4.2
by a whisker 17.2
by the skin of your teeth 21.2
by word of mouth 25.1
do everything **by** the book 28.1
learn something **by** heart 31.1

C

a piece of **cake** 20.1
the icing on the **cake** 5.1
make a **cake** 43.1
take the **cake** (US) / take the biscuit (UK) 8.1
you can't have your **cake** and eat it, too 8.1
call in sick 30.2
call it a day 18.2
call the shots 38.2
give someone a **call** 44.1
make a phone **call** 43.1
keep **calm** 48.4
the **calm** before the storm 23.2
open a **can** of worms 20.2
burn the **candle** at both ends 36.1
a loose **cannon** 16.1
can't make heads or tails of (US) / can't make head or tail of (UK) 31.1
can't see the forest for the trees (US) / can't see the wood for the trees (UK) 23.2
a feather in your **cap** 35.1
put on your thinking **cap** 31.1
in the **cards** (US) / on the cards (UK) 19.3
put your **cards** on the table 46.2
climb the **career** ladder 40.2
embark on a **career** 40.2
a **cash** cow 41.3
cast a glance 27.1
cast an eye over 27.1
a fat **cat** 41.3
a scaredy-**cat** 7.1
cat got your tongue? 24.2
curiosity killed the **cat** 51.1
let the **cat** out of the bag 25.2
like the **cat** that got the cream 7.1
not enough room to swing a **cat** 7.1
put the cat among the pigeons (UK), *see* stir up a hornet's nest (US)
take a **cat** nap 36.2
catch a cold 48.3
catch a glimpse of 48.3
catch fire 48.3
catch someone off guard 16.1
catch someone's eye 48.3
catch red-handed 54.1
catch the train 48.3
catch your breath 48.3
the early bird **catches** the worm 51.1
fight like **cats** and dogs 9.2
rain **cats** and dogs 23.1
caught between a rock and a hard place 22.2
a **chain** is only as strong as its weakest link 51.1
a slim **chance** 19.1
in for a **chance** of 19.1
not stand a **chance** 19.1
on the off-**chance** 19.1
take a **chance** 44.2
change your tune 28.1
behave out of **character** 10.4
put someone in **charge** of 46.2
work like a **charm** 39.2
cheap and nasty 6.1
dirt **cheap** 32.1
take a rain **check** on 23.2
a big **cheese** 41.3
get something off your **chest** 25.2
bite off more than you can **chew** 8.1
chicken out of 7.1
no spring **chicken** 1.1
run around like a headless **chicken** 37.1
don't count your **chickens** before they hatch 51.1
keep your **chin** up! 15.1
a chinwag (UK), *see* a chitchat (US)
a **chip** off the old block 2.2
a **chitchat** (US) / a chinwag (UK) 24.2
make a **choice** 43.1
a **cinch** 20.1
go around in **circles** 37.1
first-**class** 5.1
take a **class** 44.2
world-**class** 5.1
a **clean** bill of health 30.2
come **clean** 26.1
clear a hurdle 42.1
the coast is **clear** 21.2
a **clever** clogs 35.1
a mountain to **climb** 20.2
climb the career ladder 40.2
cloak-and-dagger 35.1
work around the **clock** 40.2
run like **clockwork** 39.2
a clever **clogs** 35.1
a **close**-knit family 2.2
a **close** shave 21.2
close up shop (US) / shut up shop (UK) 33.1
come **close** 47.2
draw to a **close** 18.2
keep a **close** watch on 27.1
pay **close** attention 48.1
too **close** for comfort 21.2
on **cloud** nine 12.1
have your head in the **clouds** 23.2
the **coast** is clear 21.2
a heavy **cold** 30.2
as **cold** as ice 50.1
catch a **cold** 48.3
get **cold** feet 11.1, 15.1
have a **cold** 45.1
someone's blood runs **cold** 13.3
stone **cold** 29.2
a blue-**collar** job 41.1
a white-**collar** job 41.1
hot under the **collar** 35.1
pass with flying **colors** 31.3
show your true **colors** 54.1
all good things **come** to those who wait 51.1
all good things must **come** to an end 18.3
come clean 26.1
come close 47.2
come down with something 30.1
come in first (US) / come first (UK) 47.2
come in last (US) / come last (UK) 47.2
come into view 47.2
come of age 1.2
come prepared 47.2
come rain or shine 23.1
come to a decision 47.2
come to an agreement 47.2
come to an end 47.2
come to a standstill 47.2
come to blows 16.1
come to grips with (US) / get to grips with (UK) 22.2
come to the rescue 47.2
come up against a brick wall 22.1
memories **come** flooding back 14.1
until the cows **come** home 34.1
too close for **comfort** 21.2
a pillar of the **community** 3.3
pay someone a **compliment** 48.1
reach a **compromise** 9.3
a foregone **conclusion** 19.3
suffer the **consequences** 38.2
a bone of **contention** 9.2
have a **conversation** 45.1
strike up a **conversation** 24.2
a tough **cookie** 4.3
do the **cooking** 43.2
cool as a cucumber 4.3
a **copycat** 31.3
a far-flung **corner** 17.2
just around the **corner** 17.2
cut **corners** 36.2
cost a fortune 33.1
cost an arm and a leg 33.1
cost next to nothing 32.1
a **couch** potato 8.1
don't **count** your chickens before they hatch 51.1
par for the **course** 42.1
the ball is in your **court** 41.2

you can't judge a book by its **cover** 51.1
a cash **cow** 41.3
until the **cows** come home 34.1
a tough nut to **crack** 22.2
at the **crack** of dawn 34.2
not all that it's **cracked** up to be 6.1
drive someone **crazy** 13.1
go **crazy** 47.1
like the cat that got the **cream** 7.1
the **crème** de la crème 5.1
cross the line 38.1
cross swords 16.1
get your wires **crossed** 25.1
a shoulder to **cry** on 15.1
cry over spilled milk 8.1
cry wolf 7.1
cry your eyes out 11.1
a **crybaby** 4.1
cool as a **cucumber** 4.3
off-the-**cuff** 35.1
not someone's **cup** of tea 6.1
curiosity killed the cat 51.1
throw someone a **curveball** 42.1
cut corners 36.2
cutting-edge 31.3

D

cloak-and-**dagger** 35.1
do **damage** 43.2
fraught with **danger** 21.2
a **dark** horse 4.2
past its sell-by **date** 6.1
set the **date** 46.1
at the crack of **dawn** 34.2
from dusk till **dawn** 34.2
a red-letter **day** 54.1
call it a **day** 18.2
day of reckoning 38.2
save for a rainy **day** 32.1
the perfect end to a perfect **day** 18.3
daylight robbery (UK), *see* highway robbery (US)
have seen better **days** 6.1
beat a **dead** horse (US) / flog a dead horse (UK) 39.2
the **dead** of night 34.2
as **deaf** as a post 50.1
fall on **deaf** ears 27.2
go **deaf** 47.1
a good **deal** 33.1
hammer out a **deal** 9.2
strike a **deal** 9.3
a fate worse than **death** 6.1
come to a **decision** 47.2
throw in at the **deep** end 22.1, 42.1
deeply 49.3
like a **deer** in headlights (US) / like a rabbit in the headlights (UK) 7.1
out of your **depth** 20.2
get your just **deserts** 38.2
almost **die** of shame 13.4
to **die** for 5.1
in **dire** straits 22.1
dirt cheap 32.1
dish the **dirt** 25.3
treat someone like **dirt** 10.1
agree to **disagree** 9.2
a recipe for **disaster** 39.2
a blessing in **disguise** 5.1
dish the dirt 25.3
keep your **distance** 48.4
within walking **distance** 17.2
the **dizzy** heights 39.1
do an experiment 43.2
do damage 43.2
do everything by the book 28.1
do exercise 43.2
do someone a favor 43.2
do the cooking 43.2
do the laundry 43.2
do well 43.2
do your best 43.2
do your hair 43.2
do your homework 43.2
just what the **doctor** ordered 30.2
dodge a bullet 16.1
the top **dog** 41.3
fight like cats and **dogs** 9.2
rain cats and **dogs** 23.1
easier said than **done** 20.2
don't count your chickens before they hatch 51.1
don't push your luck! 19.2
a foot in the **door** 40.1
a let-**down** 6.1
bring the house **down** 39.2
bucket **down** (UK) / rain buckets (US) 23.1
down in the dumps 13.1
down to earth 4.1
have something **down** to an art 28.1
let someone **down** 10.1
let your hair **down** 11.2
put your foot **down** 38.2
put your head **down** (US) / get your head down (UK) 36.1
talk **down** to someone 24.1
win something hands **down** 39.1
a **downer** (US) / a misery guts (UK) 13.1
in dribs and **drabs** 17.1
a **drag** 34.1
drag on 34.1
throw money down the **drain** 32.1
draw to a close 18.2
it's back to the **drawing** board 37.1
of your **dreams** 5.1
get **dressed** 45.2
in **dribs** and drabs 17.1
drift apart 2.1
you can lead a horse to water, but you can't make it **drink** 51.1
a round of **drinks** 29.2
drive a hard bargain 33.1
drive someone crazy 13.1
drive someone nuts 11.3
drone on 24.2
a **drop** in the ocean 17.1
at the **drop** of a hat 35.1
drop a bombshell 16.1
drop like flies 7.1
shop till you **drop** 33.1
look like a **drowned** rat 3.1
drum something into someone's head 28.1
drum up 28.1
as **dry** as a bone 50.1
like watching paint **dry** 6.1
water off a **duck**'s back 7.1
have your **ducks** in a row 40.1
down in the **dumps** 13.1
from **dusk** till dawn 34.2
go **Dutch** 32.1

E

an **eager** beaver 12.3
an **eagle** eye 27.1
go in one **ear** and out the other 14.1
grin from **ear** to ear 12.1
lend a sympathetic **ear** 27.2
listen with half an **ear** 27.2
make a pig's **ear** of something 7.1
offer a sympathetic **ear** 10.1
play it by **ear** 15.1
talk someone's **ear** off 24.1
bright and **early** 34.2
the **early** bird catches the worm 51.1
fall on deaf **ears** 27.2
I'm all **ears** 27.2
music to someone's **ears** 12.1, 27.2, 28.1
walls have **ears** 27.2
wet behind the **ears** 1.1
down to **earth** 4.1
the salt of the **earth** 4.3
want the **earth** to swallow you up 13.4
easier said than done 20.2
all too **easy** 20.1
easy money 32.1
easy peasy 20.1
take it **easy** 36.2
eat humble pie 8.1
eat like a bird 29.2
eat someone out of house and home 29.1

grab something to **eat** 29.2
I could **eat** a horse 29.2
I'll **eat** my hat 35.1
you can't have your cake and **eat** it, too 8.1
moth-**eaten** 6.1
cutting-**edge** 31.3
on **edge** 13.3
on the **edge** of your seat 12.3
rough around the **edges** 6.1
a good **egg** 4.3
a nest-**egg** 32.1
have **egg** on your face 11.3
walk on **eggshells** 8.1
elbow grease 36.1
the **elephant** in the room 7.1
embark on a career 40.2
a fitting **end** 18.3
all good things must come to an **end** 18.3
come to an **end** 47.2
put an **end** to 18.3
the **end** is in sight 18.3
the **end** of an era 18.3
the perfect **end** to a perfect day 18.3
throw in at the deep **end** 22.1, 42.1
burn the candle at both **ends** 36.1
make **ends** meet 32.1
green with **envy** 11.2, 54.1
the end of an **era** 18.3
erase the memory of 14.1
have a narrow **escape** 21.2
something's name **escapes** you 14.1
a black-tie **event** 54.1
do **everything** by the book 28.1
everything but the kitchen sink 17.1
give an **example** 44.1
set an **example** 46.1
bursting with **excitement** 12.3
do **exercise** 43.2
fall short of **expectations** 6.1
not live up to **expectations** 6.1
hands-on **experience** 40.1
do an **experiment** 43.2
extended family 2.2
go the **extra** mile 36.1, 40.1
a bird's-**eye** view 7.1
a black **eye** 54.1
an eagle **eye** 27.1
as far as the **eye** can see 17.2
beauty is in the **eye** of the beholder 51.1
cast an **eye** over 27.1
catch someone's **eye** 48.3
in the blink of an **eye** 15.1
keep an **eye** on 27.1
see **eye** to eye 9.1
the apple of someone's **eye** 8.1
turn a blind **eye** 27.1
up to your **eyeballs** 40.1
bright-**eyed** and bushy-tailed 12.3
cry your **eyes** out 11.1
have **eyes** in the back of your head 15.1
keep your **eyes** peeled 27.1
with your **eyes** shut 20.1

F

face the music 28.1
fall flat on its **face** 39.2
have egg on your **face** 11.3
lose **face** 13.4
stuff your **face** 29.2
two-**faced** 4.1
memories are **fading** 14.1
an utter **failure** 39.2
a **fair**-weather friend 2.1
fall flat on its face 39.2
fall on deaf ears 27.2
fall short of expectations 6.1
a close-knit **family** 2.2
a **family** friend 2.2
a **family** heirloom 2.2
extended **family** 2.2
immediate **family** 2.2
run in someone's **family** 2.2
start a **family** 2.2
the black sheep of the **family** 2.2
a **far**-flung corner 17.2
as **far** as the eye can see 17.2
far and wide 17.2
few and **far** between 17.1
go out of **fashion** 47.1
as **fast** as lightning 50.1
a **fat** cat 41.3
a **fate** worse than death 6.1
generous to a **fault** 10.1
do someone a **favor** 43.2
the hot **favourite** (UK) / the heavy favorite (US) 19.3
a **feast** fit for a king 29.1
a **feather** in your cap 35.1
as light as a **feather** 50.1
spoon-**feed** 8.1, 41.3
feel blue 11.2
feel for 10.1
feel your age 1.2
that sinking **feeling** 13.3
get cold **feet** 11.1, 15.1
itchy **feet** 11.2
put your **feet** up 36.2
few and far between 17.1
as fit as a **fiddle** 30.2
a level playing **field** 41.2
fight a losing battle 22.2
fight like cats and dogs 9.2
a ballpark **figure** 42.1
fill someone in 25.1
the **final** straw 22.1
fine-tune 28.1
not lift a **finger** 36.2
green fingers (UK), *see* a green thumb (US)
put the **finishing** touches on something (US) / put the finishing touches to something (UK) 18.2
catch **fire** 48.3
get on like a house on **fire** 2.1
hold **fire** 16.1
in the line of **fire** (US) / in the firing line (UK) 16.1
not going to set the world on **fire** 6.1
set **fire** 46.1
fired 40.1
in the firing line (UK), *see* in the line of fire (US)
come in **first** (US) / come first (UK) 47.2
first-class 5.1
put **first** 46.2
like a **fish** out of water 20.2
like shooting **fish** in a barrel 20.1
go **fishing** 47.1
something **fishy** 26.4
a feast **fit** for a king 29.1
as **fit** as a fiddle 30.2
fit like a glove 50.3
a **fitting** end 18.3
five o'clock shadow 3.1
flare up 30.1
as **flat** as a pancake 8.1
fall **flat** on its face 39.2
drop like **flies** 7.1
fling yourself into 12.3
flog a dead horse (UK), *see* beat a dead horse (US)
memories come **flooding** back 14.1
a far-**flung** corner 17.2
fly by 34.2
when pigs **fly** (US) / pigs might fly (UK) 19.3
wouldn't hurt a **fly** 4.2
get off to a **flying** start 18.1
pass with **flying** colors 31.3
foam at the mouth 11.2
a tough act to **follow** 5.1, 28.1
absence makes the heart grow **fonder** 51.1
put **food** on the table 8.1
a **foot** in the door 40.1
get off on the wrong **foot** 2.1
put your **foot** down 38.2
put your **foot** in it 46.2
a **foregone** conclusion 19.3
can't see the **forest** for the trees (US) / can't see the wood for the trees (UK) 23.2
forge ahead 37.1
hold down the **fort** (US) / hold the fort (UK) 16.1
back and **forth** 37.1
cost a **fortune** 33.1
take **40** winks 36.2
look **forward** to 52.2
fraught with danger 21.2
set someone **free** 46.1

a breath of **fresh** air 23.2
make a **fresh** start 18.1
a fair-weather **friend** 2.1
a family **friend** 2.2
a mutual **friend** 2.1
make some **friends** 43.1
strike up a **friendship** with 2.1
from dusk till dawn 34.2
go **from** strength to strength 39.2
the **front**-runner 41.2
a **fuddy-duddy** 4.1
full of beans 11.3
have your hands **full** 36.1
in **full** swing 42.1
have **fun** 45.1
poke **fun** at 10.3

G

the gift of the **gab** 24.2
a howling gale (UK), *see* a howling wind (US)
at this stage of the **game** 42.1
a whole new ball **game** 42.1
bridge the generation **gap** 1.1
bridge the **generation** gap 1.1
generous to a fault 10.1
get a move on 34.1
get angry 45.2
get better 45.2
get cold feet 11.1, 15.1
get dressed 45.2
get going 18.1, 45.2
get home 45.2
get in shape 30.2
get lost 45.2
get married 45.2
get off on the wrong foot 2.1
get off the ground 18.1
get off to a flying start 18.1
get on in years (US) / get on (UK) 1.1
get on like a house on fire 2.1
get on someone's nerves 15.1
get on your high horse 7.1
get out of hand 38.2
get someone's goat 7.1
get something off your chest 25.2
get started 45.2
get the ball rolling 18.1, 42.1
get the blues 54.1
get the show on the road 28.1
get thin on top (US) / go thin on top (UK) 3.1
get tired 45.2
get to the bottom of 22.2
get to grips with (UK), *see* come to grips with (US)
get wind of 27.2
get worse 45.2
get your act together 37.1
get your head down (UK), *see* put your head down (US)
get your just deserts 38.2
get your wires crossed 25.1
look like you've seen a **ghost** 3.1
the **gift** of the gab 24.2
give an answer 44.1
give an example 44.1
give a presentation 44.1
give a speech 44.1
give birth 44.1
give or take 17.1
give priority 44.1
give someone a call 44.1
give someone a hard time 10.1
give someone a hug 44.1
give someone a lift 44.1
give someone the boot 35.1
give someone the thumbs-up 9.1
give something your best shot 36.1
give the go-ahead 9.1
give the green light to 9.1
give the impression 44.1
cast a **glance** 27.1
catch a **glimpse** of 48.3
fit like a **glove** 50.3
handle someone with kid **gloves** 35.1
the **gloves** are off 42.1
go abroad 47.1
go around in circles 37.1
go bad (US) / go off (UK) 47.1
go bananas 11.3
go bankrupt 47.1
go bargain-hunting 33.1
go behind someone's back 26.3
go belly up 39.2
go crazy 47.1
go deaf 47.1
go Dutch 32.1
go fishing 47.1
go from strength to strength 39.2
go in one ear and out the other 14.1
go missing 47.1
go off (UK), *see* go bad (US)
go on a shopping spree 33.1
go out of fashion 47.1
go over someone's head 31.1
go pear-shaped (UK), *see* go sideways
go places 39.2
go quiet 47.1
go sideways (US) / go pear-shaped (UK) 39.2
go smoothly 47.1
go the extra mile 36.1, 40.1
go thin on top (UK), *see* get thin on top (US)
go under the hammer 33.1
go window shopping 33.1
raring to **go** 12.3
the show must **go** on! 28.1
touch-and-**go** 19.3
give the **go-ahead** 9.1
move the **goalposts** 42.1
get someone's **goat** 7.1
get **going** 18.1, 45.2
get your head down (UK), *see* put your head down (US)
as good as **gold** 50.1
a **golden** handshake (UK) / a golden parachute (US) 41.1
a **golden** opportunity 54.1
a **good** deal 33.1
a **good** egg 4.3
all **good** things come to those who wait 51.1
all **good** things must come to an end 18.3
as **good** as gold 50.1
too smart for your own **good** 4.1
wouldn't say boo to a **goose** 4.2
grab something to eat 29.2
take something with a **grain** of salt (US) / take something with a pinch of salt (UK) 25.3
sour **grapes** 8.1
hear something through the **grapevine** 25.3
knee-high to a **grasshopper** 1.2
a **gray** area 54.1
elbow **grease** 36.1
great age 1.2
great minds think alike 31.1
make **great** strides 37.1
a **green** thumb (US) / green fingers (UK) 54.1
give the **green** light to 9.1
green with envy 11.2, 54.1
the **green** belt 54.1
grin and bear it 22.2
grin from ear to ear 12.1
an ax to **grind** 16.1
grind to a halt 18.2
come to **grips** with (US) / get to grips with (UK) 22.2
immaculately **groomed** 3.2
get off the **ground** 18.1
hit the **ground** running 18.1
the middle **ground** 9.3
money doesn't **grow** on trees 32.1
growing pains (US), *see* teething problems (UK)
hold a **grudge** 48.2
catch someone off **guard** 16.1
anyone's **guess** 19.3
stick to your **guns** 16.1

H

a **hair**'s breadth 17.2
do your **hair** 43.2
let your **hair** down 11.2
make someone's **hair** stand on end 13.3

never have a **hair** out of place 3.2
listen with **half** an ear 27.2
tell **half**-truths 26.3
meet someone **halfway** 9.3
grind to a **halt** 18.2
a problem shared is a problem **halved** 51.1
go under the **hammer** 33.1
hammer out a deal 9.2
get out of **hand** 38.2
hand in your notice 40.1
know something like the back of your **hand** 31.1
lend a **hand** 10.1
catch red-**handed** 54.1
handle someone with kid gloves 35.1
hands-on experience 40.1
have your **hands** full 36.1
in safe **hands** 21.1
many **hands** make light work 51.1
take the law into your own **hands** 38.2
take your life in your **hands** 21.2
win something **hands** down 39.1
a golden **handshake** (UK) / a golden parachute (US) 41.1
hang by a thread 21.2
hang up your boots 35.1
caught between a rock and a **hard** place 22.2
drive a **hard** bargain 33.1
give someone a **hard** time 10.1
hard of hearing 27.2
at the drop of a **hat** 35.1
I'll eat my **hat** 35.1
keep something under your **hat** 26.1
old **hat** 35.1
take your **hat** off to 35.1
don't count your chickens before they **hatch** 51.1
bury the **hatchet** 9.2
have a baby 45.1
have a cold 45.1
have a conversation 45.1
have a hunch 26.4
have an appointment 45.1
have an argument 45.1
have a party 45.1
have a rest 45.1
have a sneaking suspicion 26.4
have a talk 45.1
have egg on your face 11.3
have fun 45.1
have lunch 45.1
have something down to an art 28.1
have your ducks in a row 40.1
have your hands full 36.1
have your head in the clouds 23.2
have your heart set on 15.1
not **have** two pennies to rub together 3.3
you can't **have** your cake and eat it, too 8.1
watch someone like a **hawk** 27.1
hit the **hay** (US) / hit the sack (UK) 23.2
bury your **head** in the sand 15.1
drum something into someone's **head** 28.1
go over someone's **head** 31.1
have eyes in the back of your **head** 15.1
have your **head** in the clouds 23.2
head over heels 12.1
put your **head** down (US) / get your head down (UK) 36.1
the **head** 38.2
run around like a **headless** chicken 37.1
two **heads** are better than one 51.1
a splitting **headache** 30.1
like a deer in **headlights** (US) / like a rabbit in the headlights (UK) 7.1
can't make **heads** or tails of (US) / can't make head or tail of (UK) 31.1
a clean bill of **health** 30.2
the picture of **health** 30.2
hear something from the horse's mouth 25.2
hear something through the grapevine 25.3
hard of **hearing** 27.2
absence makes the **heart** grow fonder 51.1
have your **heart** set on 15.1
learn something by **heart** 31.1
put your **heart** and soul into 12.3
someone's **heart** sinks 15.1
wear your **heart** on your sleeve 11.1
with a heavy **heart** 13.1
young at **heart** 1.2
big **hearted** 10.1
broken-**hearted** 11.2
a **hearty** breakfast 29.1
put the **heat** on 46.2
a **heavy** cold 30.2
the heavy favorite (US), *see* the hot favourite (UK)
head over **heels** 12.1
a **hefty** sum 32.1
the dizzy **heights** 39.1
a family **heirloom** 2.2
get on your **high** horse 7.1
a **highflier** (US) / a high-flier (UK) 3.3
highly 49.1
highway robbery (US) / daylight robbery (UK) 33.1
over the **hill** 1.2
as old as the **hills** 1.1, 50.1
hit it off 2.1
hit the big time 39.1
hit the ground running 18.1
hit the hay (US) / hit the sack (UK) 23.2
hit the jackpot 39.1
hit the right note 28.1
hit the road 37.1
hit the roof 13.1
hit the sack (UK), *see* hit the hay (US)
hold a grudge 48.2
hold a meeting 48.2
hold down a job 40.2
hold down the fort (US) / hold the fort (UK) 16.1
hold fire 16.1
hold out an olive branch 9.2
hold the line 48.2
hold your tongue 48.2
not **hold** your breath 19.3
bring **home** the bacon 41.3
eat someone out of house and **home** 29.1
get **home** 45.2
nothing to write **home** about 6.1
until the cows come **home** 34.1
do your **homework** 43.2
set **homework** 46.1
brutally **honest** 26.1
honesty is the best policy 51.1
on the hoof (UK), *see* on the run (US)
let someone off the **hook** 38.1
toot your own **horn** (US) / blow your own trumpet (UK) 28.1
stir up a **hornet**'s nest (US) / put the cat among the pigeons (UK) 25.2
a dark **horse** 4.2
a two-**horse** race 7.1
beat a dead **horse** (US) / flog a dead horse (UK) 39.2
get on your high **horse** 7.1
hear something from the **horse**'s mouth 25.2
I could eat a **horse**! 29.2
you can lead a **horse** to water, but you can't make it drink 51.1
hot under the collar 35.1
piping **hot** 29.2
the **hot** favourite (UK) / the heavy favorite (US) 19.3
sell like **hotcakes** 8.1, 41.3
the wee **hours** 34.2
bring the **house** down 39.2
eat someone out of **house** and home 29.1
get on like a **house** on fire 2.1
a **howling** wind (US) / a howling gale (UK) 23.1
give someone a **hug** 44.1
eat **humble** pie 8.1
have a **hunch** 26.4
go bargain-**hunting** 33.1
job **hunting** 40.2
clear a **hurdle** 42.1
wouldn't **hurt** a fly 4.2

I

as cold as **ice** 50.1
skating on thin **ice** 21.2
the tip of the **iceberg** 22.1
the **icing** on the cake 5.1
if looks could kill 27.1
I'm all ears 27.2
the spitting **image** of 3.1

a vivid **imagination** 4.1
immaculately groomed 3.2
immediate family 2.2
give the **impression** 44.1
improve with age 1.2
be **in** the wars 16.1
in a bit of a tight spot 22.1
in a jam 22.1
in a league of your own 42.1
in a nutshell 40.1
in bad shape 30.2
in dire straits 22.1
in for a chance of 19.1
in full swing 42.1
in living memory 14.1
in luck 19.2
in one piece 21.2
in safe hands 21.1
in someone's shoes 35.1
in the blink of an eye 15.1
in the cards (US) / on the cards (UK) 19.3
in the line of fire (US) / in the firing line (UK) 16.1
in the nick of time 34.2
in the prime of your life 1.2
in the red 41.1
know something **inside** out 31.1
itchy feet 11.2
it's back to the drawing board 37.1

J

hit the **jackpot** 39.1
in a **jam** 22.1
jazz up 28.1
a blue-collar **job** 41.1
a nine-to-five **job** 40.2
a white-collar **job** 41.1
job hunting 40.2
job satisfaction 40.2
hold down a **job** 40.2
land a **job** 40.2
an average **Joe** 4.1
jog someone's memory 14.1
make a **joke** 43.1
play practical **jokes** 10.3
a **joy** to behold 12.2
jump for **joy** 12.2
someone's pride and **joy** 12.2
weep with **joy** 12.2
you can't **judge** a book by its cover 51.1
almost **jump** out of your skin 15.1
jump down someone's throat 9.2
jump for joy 12.2
get your **just** deserts 38.2
just around the corner 17.2
just what the doctor ordered 30.2

K

keep a close watch on 27.1
keep an eye on 27.1
keep a stiff upper lip 11.2
keep calm 48.4
keep in mind (US) / bear in mind (UK) 14.1
keep in touch with 2.1
keep on the straight and narrow 38.1
keep quiet 48.4
keep someone in the loop 25.2
keep someone in the picture 25.2
keep someone posted 25.1
keep something a secret 48.4
keep something under your hat 26.1
keep up appearances 3.1
keep your chin up! 15.1
keep your distance 48.4
keep your eyes peeled 27.1
kick off 18.1
kick yourself 13.1
handle someone with **kid** gloves 35.1
if looks could **kill** 27.1
kill time 34.2
curiosity **killed** the cat 51.1
a feast fit for a **king** 29.1
everything but the **kitchen** sink 17.1
as weak as a **kitten** 50.2
knee-high to a grasshopper 1.2
the bee's **knees** 5.1
twist the **knife** 16.1
a close**-knit** family 2.2
before you **know** it 34.2
know something inside out 31.1
know something like the back of your hand 31.1
know the score 42.1
know what side your bread is buttered on 8.1
know your stuff 31.1

L

climb the career **ladder** 40.2
land a job 40.2
take a trip down memory **lane** 14.1
come in **last** (US) / come last (UK) 47.2
on its **last** legs 6.1
the **last** straw 6.1
better **late** than never 51.1
a barrel of **laughs** 4.1
do the **laundry** 43.2
break the **law** 38.1
obey the **law** 38.1
take the **law** into your own hands 38.2
a **lazybones** 36.2
take the **lead** 44.2
you can **lead** a horse to water, but you can't make it drink 51.1
shake like a **leaf** 50.2
take a leaf out of your book (UK), *see* take a page out of your book (US)
turn over a new **leaf** 18.1
in a **league** of your own 42.1
look before you **leap** 21.2
learn something by heart 31.1
learn the ropes 31.1
a new **lease** on life (US) / a new lease of life (UK) 30.2
as tough as shoe **leather** (US) / as tough as an old boot (UK) 35.1
leave a bad taste in someone's mouth 6.1
leave no stone unturned 36.1
leave someone in the lurch 10.1
left out of the picture 28.1
break a **leg**! 15.1
cost an arm and a **leg** 33.1
pull someone's **leg** 10.3
on its last **legs** 6.1
stretch your **legs** 37.1
with your tail between your **legs** 13.4
lend a hand 10.1
lend a sympathetic ear 27.2
a **let**-down 6.1
let someone down 10.1
let someone off the hook 38.1
let the cat out of the bag 25.2
let your hair down 11.2
a red-**letter** day 54.1
a **level** playing field 41.2
a white **lie** 26.3
lie through your teeth 26.3
a new lease on **life** (US) / a new lease of life (UK) 30.2
in the prime of your **life** 1.2
risk **life** and limb 21.2
take your **life** in your hands 21.2
give someone a **lift** 44.1
not **lift** a finger 36.2
as **light** as a feather 50.1
give the green **light** to 9.1
light-years ahead of 31.3
many hands make **light** work 51.1
as fast as **lightning** 50.1
be **like** a broken record 28.1
fit **like** a glove 50.3
know something **like** the back of your hand 31.1
like a deer in headlights (US) / like a rabbit in the headlights (UK) 7.1
like a fish out of water 20.2
like an oven 23.1
like a rabbit in the headlights (UK), *see* like a deer in headlights (US)
like a war zone 16.1
like getting blood from a stone (UK) / like getting blood from a turnip (US) 20.2
like shooting fish in a barrel 20.1

like talking to a brick wall **24.1**
like the cat that got the cream **7.1**
like two peas in a pod **3.1**
like watching paint dry **6.1**
look **like** butter wouldn't melt in your mouth **3.1**
read someone **like** a book **28.1**
run around **like** a headless chicken **37.1**
run **like** clockwork **39.2**
run **like** the wind **50.2**
shake **like** a leaf **50.2**
sleep **like** a log **50.3**
risk life and **limb** **21.2**
cross the **line** **38.1**
hold the **line** **48.2**
in the **line** of fire (US) / in the firing line (UK) **16.1**
line your pockets **35.1**
toe the **line** **38.2**
top of the **line** (US) / top of the range (UK) **5.1**
a chain is only as strong as its weakest **link** **51.1**
as brave as a **lion** **50.2**
the **lion**'s share **7.1**, **41.3**
keep a stiff upper **lip** **11.2**
my **lips** are sealed **26.1**
listen with half an ear **27.2**
a **little** bird told me **25.2**
precious **little** **17.1**
not **live** up to expectations **6.1**
in **living** memory **14.1**
lock, stock, and barrel **17.1**
sleep like a **log** **50.3**
a **lone** wolf **4.2**
a **long** shot **16.1**
long in the tooth **1.2**
look before you leap **21.2**
look forward to **52.2**
look like a drowned rat **3.1**
look like a million bucks (US) / look a million dollars (UK) **3.2**
look like butter wouldn't melt in your mouth **3.1**
look like you've seen a ghost **3.1**
look the part **3.2**
take a **look** **44.2**
if **looks** could kill **27.1**
keep someone in the **loop** **25.2**
a **loose** cannon **16.1**
lose face **13.4**
lose touch with **2.1**
lose your train of thought **14.1**
you win some, you **lose** some **42.1**
fight a **losing** battle **22.2**
get **lost** **45.2**
actions speak **louder** than words **51.1**
a **loudmouth** **24.2**
a stroke of **luck** **19.2**
beginner's **luck** **19.2**
don't push your **luck**! **19.2**
in **luck** **19.2**
out of **luck** **19.2**
sheer **luck** **19.2**
have a **lump** in your throat **13.1**
have **lunch** **45.1**
leave someone in the **lurch** **10.1**

M

can't **make** heads or tails of (US) / can't make head or tail of (UK) **31.1**
make a beeline for **37.1**
make a cake **43.1**
make a choice **43.1**
make a fresh start **18.1**
make a joke **43.1**
make a mess **43.1**
make a mountain out of a molehill **20.2**
make a noise **43.1**
make a phone call **43.1**
make a pig's ear of something **7.1**
make a rod for your own back **22.2**
make arrangements **43.1**
make a scene **28.1**
make ends meet **32.1**
make great strides **37.1**
make progress **43.1**
make some friends **43.1**
make someone's blood boil **13.1**
make someone's hair stand on end **13.3**
make someone's mouth water **29.1**
make waves **23.2**
make your bed **43.1**
many hands make light work **51.1**
the black **market** **54.1**
get **married** **45.2**
a sit-down **meal** (US) / a slap-up meal (UK) **29.1**
a square **meal** **29.1**
make ends **meet** **32.1**
meet someone halfway **9.3**
hold a **meeting** **48.2**
look like butter wouldn't **melt** in your mouth **3.1**
memories are fading **14.1**
memories come flooding back **14.1**
stir up **memories** **14.1**
a **memory** like a sieve **14.1**
a photographic **memory** **14.1**
erase the **memory** of **14.1**
in living **memory** **14.1**
jog someone's **memory** **14.1**
take a trip down **memory** lane **14.1**
on the **mend** **30.2**
make a **mess** **43.1**
not shoot the **messenger** **16.1**
take the mickey out of someone (UK), *see* rib someone (US)
the **middle** ground **9.3**
the **middle** of nowhere **17.2**
go the extra **mile** **36.1**, **40.1**
a million **miles** away **27.2**
miles ahead of **5.1**
cry over spilled **milk** **8.1**
a **million** miles away **27.2**
at the back of your **mind** **14.1**
mind-blowing **5.1**
keep in **mind** (US) / bear in mind (UK) **14.1**
someone's **mind** goes blank **14.1**
something slips your **mind** **14.1**
speak your **mind** **24.2**
spring to **mind** **14.1**
great **minds** think alike **31.1**
a **minefield** **16.1**
a misery guts (UK), *see* a downer (US)
go **missing** **47.1**
break the **mold** **31.3**
make a mountain out of a **molehill** **20.2**
easy **money** **32.1**
money doesn't grow on trees **32.1**
throw **money** around **32.1**
throw **money** down the drain **32.1**
once in a blue **moon** **34.1**, **54.1**
over the **moon** **12.1**
moth-eaten **6.1**
set the wheels in **motion** **37.1**
a **mountain** to climb **20.2**
make a **mountain** out of a molehill **20.2**
as quiet as a **mouse** **50.2**
be born with a silver spoon in your **mouth** **3.3**
by word of **mouth** **25.1**
foam at the **mouth** **11.2**
hear something from the horse's **mouth** **25.2**
leave a bad taste in someone's **mouth** **6.1**
look like butter wouldn't melt in your **mouth** **3.1**
make someone's **mouth** water **29.1**
get a **move** on **34.1**
move the goalposts **42.1**
a stick-in-the-**mud** **23.3**
face the **music** **28.1**
music to someone's ears **12.1**, **27.2**, **28.1**
a **mutual** friend **2.1**
my lips are sealed **26.1**

N

nail something **39.1**
something's **name** escapes you **14.1**
take a cat **nap** **36.2**
take a **nap** **44.2**
have a **narrow** escape **21.2**
keep on the straight and **narrow** **38.1**
cheap and **nasty** **6.1**
a pain in the **neck** **20.2**
breathe down someone's **neck** **38.2**
someone's **neck** of the woods **23.3**
a bundle of **nerves** **15.1**
get on someone's **nerves** **15.1**

a **nest**-egg 32.1
stir up a hornet's **nest** (US) / put the cat among the pigeons (UK) 25.2
better late than **never** 51.1
never have a hair out of place 3.2
a **new** lease on life (US) / a new lease of life (UK) 30.2
a whole **new** ball game 42.1
turn over a **new** leaf 18.1
a **newbie** 18.1
break the **news** 25.2
the bearer of bad **news** 25.2
cost **next** to nothing 32.1
in the **nick** of time 34.2
a **night** owl 7.1
the dead of **night** 34.2
a **nightmare** 22.1
a **nine-to-five** job 40.2
on cloud **nine** 12.1
a **no**-win situation 22.1
no spring chicken 1.1
there's **no** time like the present 51.1
make a **noise** 43.1
none of someone's business 26.1
second to **none** 5.1
pay through the **nose** 32.1
not all that it's cracked up to be 6.1
not enough room to swing a cat 7.1
not going to set the world on fire 6.1
not lift a finger 36.2
not out of the woods 21.2
not pulling your weight 36.2
not rocket science 20.1
not someone's cup of tea 6.1
top-**notch** 5.1
hit the right **note** 28.1
cost next to **nothing** 32.1
nothing to write home about 6.1
hand in your **notice** 40.1
the middle of **nowhere** 17.2
a tough **nut** to crack 22.2
drive someone **nuts** 11.3
the **nuts** and bolts 25.2
in a **nutshell** 40.1

O

obey the law 38.1
a drop in the **ocean** 17.1
five **o'clock** shadow 3.1
against all **odds** 19.3
at **odds** 9.2
pay over the **odds** 33.1
catch someone **off** guard 16.1
get something **off** your chest 25.2
go off (UK), *see* go bad (US)
let someone **off** the hook 38.1
off the beaten path (US) / off the beaten track (UK) 17.2
off-the-cuff 35.1
off-the-shelf 33.1
go off (UK), *see* go bad (US)
on the **off**-chance 19.1
put **off** 46.2
set **off** 46.1
the gloves are **off** 42.1
well **off** 32.1
offer a sympathetic ear 10.1
as **old** as the hills 1.1, 50.1
as tough as an old boot (UK), *see* as tough as shoe leather (US)
old hat 35.1
ripe **old** age 1.2
hold out an **olive** branch 9.2
back **on** track 37.1
be **on** a tight budget 33.1
get **on** in years (US) / get on (UK) 1.1
get **on** like a house on fire 2.1
hands-**on** experience 40.1
on cloud nine 12.1
on edge 13.3
on its last legs 6.1
on the ball 42.1
on the cards (UK), *see* in the cards (US)
on the edge of your seat 12.3
on the hoof (UK), *see* on the run (US)
on the mend 30.2
on the off-chance 19.1
on the road to recovery 30.1
on the ropes 39.2
on the run (US) / on the hoof (UK) 37.1
on the same page 9.1
on the same wavelength 9.1
on the tip of your tongue 14.1
on the verge of 37.1
on the warpath 13.1
on time 34.1
on top of the world 12.1
on your best behavior 10.4
once in a blue moon 34.1, 54.1
the **once**-over 27.1
a **one**-trick pony 7.1
back to square **one** 37.1
in **one** piece 21.2
two heads are better than **one** 51.1
open a can of worms 20.2
a golden **opportunity** 54.1
a tall **order** 20.2
just what the doctor **ordered** 30.2
behave **out** of character 10.4
get **out** of hand 38.2
left **out** of the picture 28.1
not **out** of the woods 21.2
out of luck 19.2
out of pocket 32.1
out of the blue 54.1
out of this world 5.1
out of your depth 20.2
think **outside** the box 40.2
like an **oven** 23.1
go **over** someone's head 31.1
over the hill 1.2
over the moon 12.1
pay **over** the odds 33.1
smooth things **over** 9.2
the once-**over** 27.1
turn **over** a new leaf 18.1
an **overnight** success 39.1
a night **owl** 7.1
as wise as an **owl** 50.2
in a league of your **own** 42.1
toot your **own** horn (US) / blow your own trumpet (UK) 28.1
as strong as an **ox** 50.2
the world is your **oyster** 7.1

P

at a snail's **pace** 37.1
packed like sardines 8.1
on the same **page** 9.1
take a **page** out of your book (US) / take a leaf out of your book (UK) 28.1
a **pain** in the neck 20.2
growing pains (US), *see* teething problems (UK)
like watching **paint** dry 6.1
paint the town red 54.1
as flat as a **pancake** 8.1
below **par** 42.1
par for the course 42.1
a golden parachute (US), *see* a golden handshake (UK)
parched 29.2
a walk in the **park** 20.1
parrot 24.2
look the **part** 3.2
have a **party** 45.1
pass with flying colors 31.3
past its prime 6.1
past its sell-by date 6.1
a **pat** on the back 15.1
off the beaten **path** (US) / off the beaten track (UK) 17.2
pay a visit 48.1
pay close attention 48.1
pay over the odds 33.1
pay someone a compliment 48.1
pay someone back 48.1
pay through the nose 32.1
pay tribute 48.1
pay your way 48.1
something **pays** peanuts 8.1

as proud as a **peacock** 50.2
something pays **peanuts** 8.1
go pear-shaped (UK), *see* go sideways (US)
like two **peas** in a pod 3.1
keep your eyes **peeled** 27.1
not have two **pennies** to rub together 3.3
practice makes **perfect** 51.1
the **perfect** end to a perfect day 18.3
a teacher's **pet** 31.3
make a **phone** call 43.1
take a **photo** 44.2
a **photographic** memory 14.1
pick someone's brain 15.1
pick up the pieces 22.2
a **picture** is worth a thousand words 51.1
keep someone in the **picture** 25.2
left out of the **picture** 28.1
put someone in the **picture** 28.1
the **picture** of health 30.2
eat humble **pie** 8.1
pie in the sky 19.3
a **piece** of cake 20.1
in one **piece** 21.2
pick up the **pieces** 22.2
put the cat among the pigeons (UK), *see* stir up a hornet's nest (US)
make a **pig**'s ear of something 7.1
when **pigs** fly (US) / pigs might fly (UK) 19.3
a **pillar** of the community 3.3
take something with a pinch of salt (UK), *see* take something with a grain of salt (US)
piping hot 29.2
pitch black 54.1
never have a hair out of **place** 3.2
go **places** 39.2
plain sailing (UK), *see* smooth sailing (US)
play it by ear 15.1
play it safe 21.1
play practical jokes 10.3
a team **player** 41.2
a level **playing** field 41.2
out of **pocket** 32.1
line your **pockets** 35.1
like two peas in a **pod** 3.1
poke fun at 10.3
honesty is the best **policy** 51.1
a one-trick **pony** 7.1
as deaf as a **post** 50.1
keep someone **posted** 25.1
a watched **pot** never boils 51.1
a couch **potato** 8.1
play **practical** jokes 10.3
practice makes perfect 51.1
precious little 17.1
come **prepared** 47.2
there's no time like the **present** 51.1
give a **presentation** 44.1
put **pressure** on 46.2
bargain-basement **prices** 33.1
rock-bottom **prices** 32.1
slash **prices** 33.1
pricey 32.1
someone's **pride** and joy 12.2
in the **prime** of your life 1.2
past its **prime** 6.1
give **priority** 44.1
a **problem** shared is a problem halved 51.1
teething **problems** (UK) / growing pains (US) 20.2
make **progress** 43.1
a **promising** start 18.1
as **proud** as a peacock 50.2
pull out all the stops 36.1
pull someone's leg 10.3
pull your socks up 35.1
not **pulling** your weight 36.2
don't **push** your luck! 19.2
put an end to 18.3
put a stop to 46.2
put first 46.2
put food on the table 8.1
put it bluntly 46.2
put off 46.2
put on your thinking cap 31.1
put pressure on 46.2
put someone in charge of 46.2
put someone in the picture 28.1
put something in writing 46.2
put the cat among the pigeons (UK), *see* stir up a hornet's nest (US)
put the finishing touches on something (US) / put the finishing touches to something (UK) 18.2
put the heat on 46.2
put your cards on the table 46.2
put your feet up 36.2
put your foot down 38.2
put your foot in it 46.2
put your head down (US) / get your head down (UK) 36.1
put your heart and soul into 12.3

Q

quench your thirst 29.2
as **quiet** as a mouse 50.2
go **quiet** 47.1
keep **quiet** 48.4

R

like a rabbit in the headlights (UK), *see* like a deer in headlights (US)
a two-horse **race** 7.1
the rat **race** 41.3
rack your brain (US) / rack your brains (UK) 14.1
as right as **rain** 30.2
come **rain** or shine 23.1
rain buckets (US), *see* bucket down (UK)
rain cats and dogs 23.1
take a **rain** check on 23.2
save for a **rainy** day 32.1
top of the range (UK), *see* top of the line (US)
raring to go 12.3
look like a drowned **rat** 3.1
smell a **rat** 26.4
the **rat** race 41.3
second **rate** 6.1
rave reviews 5.1
a **ray** of sunshine 23.2
reach a compromise 9.3
reach a verdict 38.2
read someone like a book 28.1
read someone the riot act 9.2
recharge your batteries 30.2
a **recipe** for disaster 39.2
day of **reckoning** 38.2
be like a broken **record** 28.1
on the road to **recovery** 30.1
a **red**-letter day 54.1
catch **red**-handed 54.1
in the **red** 41.1
paint the town **red** 54.1
red tape 41.1
see **red** 11.2, 54.1
turn beet-**red** 54.1
reduce to tears 13.1
come to the **rescue** 47.2
bear a striking **resemblance** 3.1
have a **rest** 45.1
retail therapy 33.1
rave **reviews** 5.1
rib someone (US) / take the mickey out of someone (UK) 10.3
strike it **rich** 32.1
a bumpy **ride** 22.2
take someone for a **ride** 26.3
ridiculously 49.6
as **right** as rain 30.2
hit the **right** note 28.1
ring a bell 14.1
read someone the **riot** act 9.2
a **rip-off** 32.1
ripe old age 1.2
risk life and limb 21.2
run the **risk** 21.2
get the show on the **road** 28.1
hit the **road** 37.1
on the **road** to recovery 30.1
highway **robbery** (US) / daylight robbery (UK) 33.1
caught between a **rock** and a hard place 22.2
rock-bottom prices 32.1
not **rocket** science 20.1

make a **rod** for your own back 22.2
roll up your sleeves 35.1, 36.1
get the ball **rolling** 18.1, 42.1
rolling in it 32.1
hit the **roof** 13.1
not enough **room** to swing a cat 7.1
the elephant in the **room** 7.1
rule the **roost** 38.2
learn the **ropes** 31.1
on the **ropes** 39.2
rough around the edges 6.1
a **round** of drinks 29.2
have your ducks in a **row** 40.1
not have two pennies to **rub** together 3.3
rub salt into the wound 22.2
a **rule** of thumb 15.1
rule the roost 38.2
bend the **rules** 38.1
on the **run** (US) / on the hoof (UK) 37.1
run around like a headless chicken 37.1
run in someone's family 2.2
run like clockwork 39.2
run like the wind 50.2
run the risk 21.2
a **runaway** success 39.2
the front-**runner** 41.2
hit the ground **running** 18.1
up and **running** 37.1

S

hit the sack (UK), *see* hit the hay (US)
better **safe** than sorry 21.2
in **safe** hands 21.1
play it **safe** 21.1
safe and sound 21.1
safety first 21.1
easier **said** than done 20.2
set **sail** 46.1
smooth **sailing** (US) / plain sailing (UK) 20.1
rub **salt** into the wound 22.2
take something with a grain of **salt** (US) / take something with a pinch of salt (UK) 25.3
the **salt** of the earth 4.3
on the **same** page 9.1
on the **same** wavelength 9.1
bury your head in the **sand** 15.1
packed like **sardines** 8.1
job **satisfaction** 40.2
save for a rainy day 32.1
saved by the bell 42.1
wouldn't **say** boo to a goose 4.2
a **scaredy**-cat 7.1
a **scatterbrain** 15.1
make a **scene** 28.1
not rocket **science** 20.1
a **scorcher** 23.1
know the **score** 42.1
scrape by 31.3
not be up to **scratch** (UK) / not be up to snuff (US) 6.1
on the silver **screen** 54.1
screw up 39.2
my lips are **sealed** 26.1
on the edge of your **seat** 12.3
take a **seat** 44.2
second rate 6.1
second to none 5.1
keep something a **secret** 48.4
top **secret** 26.1
as far as the eye can **see** 17.2
can't **see** the forest for the trees (US) / can't see the wood for the trees (UK) 23.2
see eye to eye 9.1
see red 11.2, 54.1
have **seen** better days 6.1
look like you've **seen** a ghost 3.1
a **selfish** streak 4.1
sell like hotcakes 8.1, 41.3
past its **sell-by** date 6.1
send shivers down someone's spine 13.3
talk some **sense** into someone 24.1
have your heart **set** on 15.1
not going to **set** the world on fire 6.1
set an alarm 46.1
set an example 46.1
set a trap 46.1
set fire 46.1
set homework 46.1
set off 46.1
set sail 46.1
set someone free 46.1
set the date 46.1
set the table 46.1
set the wheels in motion 37.1
five o'clock **shadow** 3.1
shake in your boots 13.3
shake like a leaf 50.2
almost die of **shame** 13.4
get in **shape** 30.2
in bad **shape** 30.2
the lion's **share** 7.1, 41.3
a problem **shared** is a problem halved 51.1
a close **shave** 21.2
the black **sheep** of the family 2.2
sheer luck 19.2
as white as a **sheet** 11.2, 50.1
off-the-**shelf** 33.1
come rain or **shine** 23.1
send **shivers** down someone's spine 13.3
as tough as **shoe** leather (US) / as tough as an old boot (UK) 35.1
in someone's **shoes** 35.1
not **shoot** the messenger 16.1
shoot the breeze 24.2
like **shooting** fish in a barrel 20.1
close up **shop** (US) / shut up shop (UK) 33.1
shop around 33.1
shop till you drop 33.1
talk **shop** 24.1
go on a **shopping** spree 33.1
go window **shopping** 33.1
fall **short** of expectations 6.1
a long **shot** 16.1
give something your best **shot** 36.1
call the **shots** 38.2
a **shoulder** to cry on 15.1
a weight off someone's **shoulders** 11.1
get the **show** on the road 28.1
show your true colors 54.1
steal the **show** 5.1
the **show** must go on! 28.1
take a **shower** 44.2
shut up shop (UK), *see* close up shop (US)
with your eyes **shut** 20.1
call in **sick** 30.2
know what **side** your bread is buttered on 8.1
the wrong **side** of the tracks 3.3
go **sideways** (US) / go pear-shaped (UK) 39.2
a memory like a **sieve** 14.1
the end is in **sight** 18.3
be born with a **silver** spoon in your mouth 3.3
on the **silver** screen 54.1
everything but the kitchen **sink** 17.1
sink or swim 42.1
that **sinking** feeling 13.3
someone's heart **sinks** 15.1
a **sit-down** meal (US) / a slap-up meal (UK) 29.1
a no-win **situation** 22.1
a win-win **situation** 40.1
talk yourself out of any awkward **situation** 24.1
skating on thin ice 21.2
all **skin** and bones 3.1
almost jump out of your **skin** 15.1
by the **skin** of your teeth 21.2
thick-**skinned** 15.1
pie in the **sky** 19.3
a **slacker** 36.2
a **slap** on the wrist 38.2
a slap-up meal (UK), *see* a sit-down meal (US)
slash prices 33.1
sleep like a log 50.3
up your **sleeve** 35.1
wear your heart on your **sleeve** 11.1
roll up your **sleeves** 35.1, 36.1
the best thing since **sliced** bread 5.1
a **slim** chance 19.1
something **slips** your mind 14.1
slowly but surely 37.1
small talk 24.1
too **smart** for your own good 4.1
smell a rat 26.4
smooth sailing (US) / plain sailing (UK) 20.1

smooth things over 9.2
go **smoothly** 47.1
at a **snail**'s pace 37.1
have a **sneaking** suspicion 26.4
snowed under 36.1
not be up to snuff (US), *see* not be up to scratch (UK)
a **social** butterfly 4.2
pull your **socks** up 35.1
you win **some**, you lose some 42.1
come down with **something** 30.1
grab **something** to eat 29.2
something fishy 26.4
better safe than **sorry** 21.2
put your heart and **soul** into 12.3
a **soulmate** 2.1
safe and **sound** 21.1
sour grapes 8.1
actions **speak** louder than words 51.1
speak your mind 24.2
give a **speech** 44.1
spill the beans 25.3
cry over **spilled** milk 8.1
spin a good yarn 24.2
send shivers down someone's **spine** 13.3
the **spitting** image of 3.1
a **splitting** headache 30.1
splurge 33.1
spoil your appetite 29.2
be born with a silver **spoon** in your mouth 3.3
spoon-feed 8.1, 41.3
in a bit of a tight **spot** 22.1
spread like wildfire 25.1
go on a shopping **spree** 33.1
no **spring** chicken 1.1
spring to mind 14.1
a **square** meal 29.1
back to **square** one 37.1
stab someone in the back 16.1
stacks of 17.1
at this **stage** of the game 42.1
make someone's hair **stand** on end 13.3
not **stand** a chance 19.1
come to a **standstill** 47.2
a promising **start** 18.1
get off to a flying **start** 18.1
make a fresh **start** 18.1
start a family 2.2
get **started** 45.2
state-of-the-art 31.3
a **steal** 33.1
steal someone's thunder 23.2
steal the show 5.1
a **stick**-in-the-mud 23.3
stick to your guns 16.1
up **sticks** (UK) / uproot (US) 37.1
keep a **stiff** upper lip 11.2
stir up a hornet's nest (US) / put the cat among the pigeons (UK) 25.2
stir up memories 14.1
lock, **stock**, and barrel 17.1
have butterflies in your **stomach** 12.3
a **stone**'s throw 17.2
leave no **stone** unturned 36.1
like getting blood from a **stone** (UK) / like getting blood from a turnip (US) 20.2
stone cold 29.2
put a **stop** to 46.2
pull out all the **stops** 36.1
a **storm** in a teacup 23.2
the calm before the **storm** 23.2
keep on the **straight** and narrow 38.1
in dire **straits** 22.1
the final **straw** 22.1
the last **straw** 6.1
a selfish **streak** 4.1
go from **strength** to strength 39.2
stretch your legs 37.1
make great **strides** 37.1
strike a deal 9.3
strike it rich 32.1
strike up a conversation 24.2
strike up a friendship with 2.1
bear a **striking** resemblance 3.1
a **stroke** of luck 19.2
a chain is only as **strong** as its weakest link 51.1
as **strong** as an ox 50.2
strongly 49.4
know your **stuff** 31.1
stuff your face 29.2
a **stumbling** block 22.1
an overnight **success** 39.1
a runaway **success** 39.2
suffer the consequences 38.2
sugarcoat 8.1
a hefty **sum** 32.1
a ray of **sunshine** 23.2
slowly but **surely** 37.1
have a sneaking **suspicion** 26.4
want the earth to **swallow** you up 13.4
a **sweet** tooth 15.1
sink or **swim** 42.1
in full **swing** 42.1
not enough room to **swing** a cat 7.1
cross **swords** 16.1
lend a **sympathetic** ear 27.2
offer a **sympathetic** ear 10.1

T

put food on the **table** 8.1
put your cards on the **table** 46.2
set the **table** 46.1
tackle 42.1
with your **tail** between your legs 13.4
bright-eyed and bushy-**tailed** 12.3
can't make heads or **tails** of (US) / can't make head or tail of (UK) 31.1
give or **take** 17.1
take 40 winks 36.2
take a bite 44.2
take a breather 36.2
take a cat nap 36.2
take a chance 44.2
take a class 44.2
take a look 44.2
take a nap 44.2
take a page out of your book (US) / take a leaf out of your book (UK) 28.1
take a photo 44.2
take a rain check on 23.2
take a seat 44.2
take a shower 44.2
take a test 44.2
take a trip down memory lane 14.1
take it easy 36.2
take someone for a ride 26.3
take something with a grain of salt (US) / take something with a pinch of salt (UK) 25.3
take the cake (US) / take the biscuit (UK) 8.1
take the law into your own hands 38.2
take the lead 44.2
take the mickey out of someone (UK), *see* rib someone (US)
take your hat off to 35.1
take your life in your hands 21.2
take your time 34.1
have a **talk** 45.1
small **talk** 24.1
talk big 24.1
talk down to someone 24.1
talk shop 24.1
talk someone's ear off 24.1
talk some sense into someone 24.1
talk the talk 24.1
talk yourself out of any awkward situation 24.1
you can **talk**! 24.1
like **talking** to a brick wall 24.1
a **tall** order 20.2
red **tape** 41.1
an acquired **taste** 29.2
leave a bad **taste** in someone's mouth 6.1
not someone's cup of **tea** 6.1
a **teacher**'s pet 31.3
a storm in a **teacup** 23.2
a **team** player 41.2
reduce to **tears** 13.1
teeter on the brink 21.2
by the skin of your **teeth** 21.2
lie through your **teeth** 26.3
teething problems (UK) / growing pains (US) 20.2
tell half-truths 26.3

to **tell** you the truth 26.1
tender age 1.2
take a **test** 44.2
that sinking feeling 13.3
the ball is in your court 41.2
the early bird catches the worm 51.1
the show must go on! 28.1
the world is your oyster 7.1
retail **therapy** 33.1
there's no time like the present 51.1
thick-skinned 15.1
get **thin** on top (US) / go thin on top (UK) 3.1
skating on **thin** ice 21.2
all good **things** come to those who wait 51.1
all good **things** must come to an end 18.3
bright young **things** 1.1
great minds **think** alike 31.1
think outside the box 40.2
think the world of 5.1
put on your **thinking** cap 31.1
quench your **thirst** 29.2
lose your train of **thought** 14.1
a picture is worth a **thousand** words 51.1
a **thousand-and-one** 17.1
hang by a **thread** 21.2
have a lump in your **throat** 13.1
jump down someone's **throat** 9.2
at each other's **throats** 11.1
hear something **through** the grapevine 25.3
lie **through** your teeth 26.3
pay **through** the nose 32.1
a stone's **throw** 17.2
throw in at the deep end 22.1, 42.1
throw in the towel 42.1
throw money around 32.1
throw money down the drain 32.1
throw someone a curveball 42.1
throw up 30.2
a green **thumb** (US) / green fingers (UK) 54.1
a rule of **thumb** 15.1
give someone the **thumbs**-up 9.1
twiddle your **thumbs** 15.1
steal someone's **thunder** 23.2
the **tide** has turned 23.3
a black-**tie** event 54.1
tied up 40.2
tongue-**tied** 11.2
in a bit of a **tight** spot 22.1
be on a **tight** budget 33.1
tighten your belt 32.1
about **time** 34.2
give someone a hard **time** 10.1
hit the big **time** 39.1
in the nick of **time** 34.2
kill **time** 34.2
on **time** 34.1
take your **time** 34.1
there's no **time** like the present 51.1
time's up! 34.1
waste **time** 34.1
on the **tip** of your tongue 14.1
the **tip** of the iceberg 22.1
get **tired** 45.2
warm and **toasty** (US) / warm as toast (UK) 8.1
toe the line 38.2
get your act **together** 37.1
a little bird **told** me 25.2
cat got your **tongue**? 24.2
hold your **tongue** 48.2
on the tip of your **tongue** 14.1
tongue-tied 11.2
tons of 17.1
too big for your boots 35.1
too close for comfort 21.2
too smart for your own good 4.1
a bad workman always blames his **tools** 51.1
toot your own horn (US) / blow your own trumpet (UK) 28.1
a sweet **tooth** 15.1
long in the **tooth** 1.2
get thin on **top** (US) / go thin on top (UK) 3.1
on **top** of the world 12.1
the **top** dog 41.3
top-notch 5.1
top of the line (US) / top of the range (UK) 5.1
top secret 26.1
keep in **touch** with 2.1
lose **touch** with 2.1
touch-and-go 19.3
touch base 25.1
put the finishing **touches** on something (US) / put the finishing touches to something (UK) 18.2
as **tough** as shoe leather (US) / as tough as an old boot (UK) 35.1
a **tough** act to follow 5.1, 28.1
a **tough** cookie 4.3
a **tough** nut to crack 22.2
throw in the **towel** 42.1
paint the **town** red 54.1
back on **track** 37.1
off the beaten track (UK), see off the beaten path (US)
the wrong side of the **tracks** 3.3
blaze a **trail** 37.1
catch the **train** 48.3
lose your **train** of thought 14.1
set a **trap** 46.1
treat someone like dirt 10.1
bark up the wrong **tree** 7.1
can't see the forest for the **trees** (US) / can't see the wood for the trees (UK) 23.2
money doesn't grow on **trees** 32.1
pay **tribute** 48.1
a one-**trick** pony 7.1
take a **trip** down memory lane 14.1
show your **true** colors 54.1
blow your own trumpet (UK), *see* toot your own horn (US)
bend the **truth** 26.3
to tell you the **truth** 26.1
tell half-**truths** 26.3
change your **tune** 28.1
fine-**tune** 28.1
turn a blind eye 27.1
turn beet-red 54.1
turn over a new leaf 18.1
the tide has **turned** 23.3
like getting blood from a turnip (US), *see* like getting blood from a stone (UK)
twiddle your thumbs 15.1
twilight years 1.1
twist the knife 16.1
twist someone's arm 38.2
a **two**-horse race 7.1
like **two** peas in a pod 3.1
not have **two** pennies to rub together 3.3
two-faced 4.1
two heads are better than one 51.1

U

unacceptable behavior 10.4
unbelievably 49.4
go **under** the hammer 33.1
keep something **under** your hat 26.1
snowed **under** 36.1
under the weather 30.1
under wraps 26.1
until the cows come home 34.1
leave no stone **unturned** 36.1
not be **up** to scratch (UK) / not be up to snuff (US) 6.1
put your feet **up** 36.2
tied **up** 40.2
time's **up**! 34.1
up and about 30.2
up and running 37.1
up in arms 11.1
up sticks (UK) / uproot (US) 37.1
up to your eyeballs 40.1
up your sleeve 35.1
an **uphill** battle 16.1
keep a stiff **upper** lip 11.2
uproot (US), *see* up sticks (UK)
business as **usual** 40.1
an **utter** failure 39.2

V

reach a **verdict** 38.2
on the **verge** of 37.1
a bird's-eye **view** 7.1

come into **view** 47.2
pay a **visit** 48.1
a **vivid** imagination 4.1

W

all good things come to those who **wait** 51.1
a **walk** in the park 20.1
walk on eggshells 8.1
within **walking** distance 17.2
come up against a brick **wall** 22.1
like talking to a brick **wall** 24.1
bouncing off the **walls** 12.3
walls have ears 27.2
want the earth to swallow you up 13.4
like a **war** zone 16.1
be in the **wars** 16.1
warm and toasty (US) / warm as toast (UK) 8.1
on the **warpath** 13.1
wash down 29.2
waste time 34.1
keep a close **watch** on 27.1
watch someone like a hawk 27.1
a **watched** pot never boils 51.1
like **watching** paint dry 6.1
like a fish out of **water** 20.2
make someone's mouth **water** 29.1
water off a duck's back 7.1
you can lead a horse to **water**, but you can't make it drink 51.1
on the same **wavelength** 9.1
make **waves** 23.2
pay your **way** 48.1
as **weak** as a kitten 50.2
a chain is only as strong as its **weakest** link 51.1
the worse for **wear** 30.1
wear your heart on your sleeve 11.1
a fair-**weather** friend 2.1
under the **weather** 30.1
the **wee** hours 34.2
weep with joy 12.2
a **weight** off someone's shoulders 11.1
not pulling your **weight** 36.2
do **well** 43.2
well behaved 10.4
well off 32.1
wet behind the ears 1.1
set the **wheels** in motion 37.1
when pigs fly (US) / pigs might fly (UK) 19.3
whip up 29.1
by a **whisker** 17.2
a **whistleblower** 26.1
a **white**-collar job 41.1
a **white** lie 26.3
as **white** as a sheet 11.2, 50.1
a **whole** new ball game 42.1
far and **wide** 17.2
spread like **wildfire** 25.1
a no-**win** situation 22.1
a **win**-win situation 40.1
win something hands down 39.1
you **win** some, you lose some 42.1
a howling **wind** (US) / a howling gale (UK) 23.1
get **wind** of 27.2
run like the **wind** 50.2
go **window** shopping 33.1
take 40 **winks** 36.2
get your **wires** crossed 25.1
as **wise** as an owl 50.2
with a heavy heart 13.1
with your tail between your legs 13.4
within walking distance 17.2
a lone **wolf** 4.2
cry **wolf** 7.1
wolf down 29.1
can't see the wood for the trees (UK), *see* can't see the forest for the trees (US)
not out of the **woods** 21.2
someone's neck of the **woods** 23.3
by **word** of mouth 25.1
actions speak louder than **words** 51.1
a picture is worth a thousand **words** 51.1
many hands make light **work** 51.1
work around the clock 40.2
work like a charm 39.2
a bad **workman** always blames his tools 51.1
not going to set the **world** on fire 6.1
on top of the **world** 12.1
out of this **world** 5.1
the **world** is your oyster 7.1
think the **world** of 5.1
world-class 5.1
the best of both **worlds** 5.1
the early bird catches the **worm** 51.1
open a can of **worms** 20.2
a fate **worse** than death 6.1
get **worse** 45.2
someone's bark is **worse** than their bite 4.2
the **worse** for wear 30.1
a picture is **worth** a thousand words 51.1
wouldn't hurt a fly 4.2
wouldn't say boo to a goose 4.2
rub salt into the **wound** 22.2
under **wraps** 26.1
a slap on the **wrist** 38.2
nothing to **write** home about 6.1
put something in **writing** 46.2
bark up the **wrong** tree 7.1
get off on the **wrong** foot 2.1
the **wrong** side of the tracks 3.3

Y

spin a good **yarn** 24.2
get on in **years** (US) / get on (UK) 1.1
light-**years** ahead of 31.3
twilight **years** 1.1
you can lead a horse to water, but you can't make it drink 51.1
you can't judge a book by its cover 51.1
you win some, you lose some 42.1
bright **young** things 1.1
young at heart 1.2

Z

like a war **zone** 16.1
zone out 27.2

Index of common words and subjects

Entries are listed by unit number or module number. Main entries are **bold**.

A

"absolutely" 49.1
advantage and disadvantage 3.3
adverbs, intensifying 49
age 1
agreement 9.1
amount 17.1
anger 13.2
animals 4.2, **7**, 25.2, 41.4, 50.2
appearance 3
arts, the 28
"as" 50.1
authority 38

B

background 3.3
bad things 6
"beat" 52.4
beginning 18.1
behavior 10
body, the 11.1, **15**, 38.2
"borrow" 52.5
business 40, 41

C

"carry" 53.4
"catch" 48.3
chance 19
character 4
"charge" 53.2
clothes 3.2, 35
college 31.2
colors 11.2, 41.1, **54**
"come" 47.2
compromise 9.3
conflict 9.2
conversation 24.2
criticizing things 6

D

"damage" 53.1
danger 21.2
day, parts of the 34.2
dealing with problems 22.2
"deeply" 49.3
difficult situations 22
difficulties 20.2, 22.1
disagreement 9.2
distance 17.2
"do" 43.2
dress 3.2
drink/drinking 8, **29.2**

E

ease 20.1
easily confused words 52, 53
eating 29.1
education 31
embarrassment 13.4
emotions 11
emotions, negative 13
emotions, positive 12
ending 18.2, 18.3
enthusiasm 12.3
excitement 12.4
"expect" 52.2
expressions, common 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48

F

failure 39.2
family 2.2
fear 13.3
"feel" 52.7
feelings 12, 13
"fill up" 53.2
fitness 30.2
food 4.3, **8**, 11.3, 25.3, 29.1, 41.3
friendship 2.1

G

"get" 45.2
"give" 44.1
"go" 47.1
good things 5

H

happiness 12.1
"have" 45.1
health 30
"hear" 52.3
hearing 27.2
"highly" 49.2
"hold" 48.2
"hope" 52.6
"hurt" 53.1

I

information, sharing 25
"injure" 53.1
intensifying adverbs 49

J

"job" 40.2, 53.7
"job" 40.2
"joy" 12.2

K

"keep" 48.4
keeping secrets 26.2
kindness 10.1
knowledge 31

L

law, the 38
lazy, being 36.3
learning 31
"lend" 52.5
lies 26
"like" 50.3

"listen to" 52.3
listening 27.2
"load" 53.2
"look at" 52.1
"look forward to" 52.2
looking 27.1
luck 19
"luck" 19.2

M

"make" 43.1
memory 14, 53.5
money 32
movement 37
music 28

N

nature 23
negative emotions 13
news, sharing 25.1
night 34.2

P

"pay" 48.1
personality traits 4
positive emotions 12
praising things 5.1
probability 19.3
problems 20.2, 22.1, 22.2
progress 37
proverbs 51
"put" 46.2

R

recovery 30.1
relationships 2
relaxing 36.2
"remember" 53.5
"remind" 53.5
"ridiculously" 49.6
risk 21.2
rules 38

S

sadness 13.1
safety 21.1
"say" 53.3
school 31.2
science 31.3
secrets, keeping 26.2
"see" 52.1
"sensible" 53.6
"sensitive" 53.6
"set" 46.1
sharing information 25
sharing news 25.1
shoes 35
shopping 33
sickness 30.1
similes 50
"smell" 52.7
speaking 24
sports 41.2, **42**
starting 18.1
"strongly" 49.4
style 3.2
success 39.1
suspicion 26.4
sympathy 10.1

T

"take" 44.2
"talk" 24.1
talking 24
teasing people 10.3
technology 31.3
"tell" 53.3
telling lies 26.3
telling the truth 26.1
tests 31.2
thinking 31
time 34.1
treating people badly 10.2
truth 26

U

"unbelievably" 49.5
understanding 9.1

W

war 16
"wait" 52.2
"watch" 52.1
watching 27.1
weapons 16
"wear" 53.4
weather 23
"win" 52.4
"wish" 52.6
work 40, 41; "work" 53.7
working 36
working hard 36.1

Acknowledgments

The publisher would like to thank:

Edward Aves for editorial assistance; Shahid Mahmood, Chhaya Sajwan, and Michelle Staples for design assistance; Steph Lewis for proofreading and indexing; Christine Stroyan for audio recording management; and ID Audio for audio recording and production.

All images are copyright DK. For more information, please visit **www.dkimages.com**.